Colloquial Slovene

A Complete Language Course

Andrea Albretti
## Contents

**Introduction**  
A guide to the alphabet and pronunciation  

1. **Živio, Robert!**
   Hello, Robert!  
2. **Ali si v sredo doma?**
   Are you at home on Wednesday?  
3. **Ura je tri**
   It is three o'clock  
4. **Zakaj se smejis? Zato, ker sem dobre volje!**
   Why are you smiling? Because I'm in a good mood!  
5. **Nič ne skrbi!**
   Don't worry!  
6. **Kaj iščeš?**
   What are you looking for?  
7. **Kako je bilo?**
   How was it?  
8. **Moram se preseliti!**
   I must move!  
9. **Treba je napolniti hladilnik!**
   The fridge needs filling!  
10. **Obljubil sem, da vas bom povabil na večerjo**
   I promised to take you out for supper  
11. **Gričo imate?**
   You have flu!  
12. **Nekaj imam v načrtu!**
   I have something planned!
Introduction

The country

Slovenia is one of the youngest and smallest European countries. Its independence dates from 1991. Before that it was the northernmost republic of Yugoslavia.

Geographically, it borders Italy, Austria, Hungary and Croatia. It includes a part of the Alps and also has some 40 kilometres of coastline on the Adriatic; a joke goes that if all the Slovenes went to the seaside at once they could only stand there on one foot. Nevertheless, it is a Mediterranean country and the Slovenes are proud of their sea.

The political, cultural and commercial capital of Slovenia is Ljubljana.

The Slovene language

The Slovene language is spoken by the 2 million people living in the Republic of Slovenia, by Slovene minority groups mainly in Austria, Italy and Hungary, and by emigrants scattered around America, Australia, New Zealand and elsewhere in the world. Slovene belongs to the Indo-European family of languages.

Literacy and general culture reached the Slovenes in the sixteenth century during the period of the Reformation. The first Slovene book was printed in 1551, the first translation of the Bible into Slovene was in 1584, and a book on Slovene grammar followed. Grammatically, Slovene is rather complicated. It is an inflectional language, which means that it has cases and endings added to the words, which you will learn about in this book.

Slovenia is divided into eight regions, each of which has its own dialect. Every Slovene will be happy to tell you how, had he spoken
Using this book

Look at the ‘Guide to the alphabet and pronunciation’ section first; this will give you some idea of how the language is pronounced. The body of the book consists of thirteen lessons. Each lesson follows the same pattern. You are first given a summary of what you will learn in the lesson. Lessons are divided into two or three parts, each beginning with a dialogue, which is the core of the part. The English introduction sets the scene for the dialogue, where, through an everyday situation, you will learn new vocabulary, expressions and grammatical structures, all discussed in language points, a section which follows the dialogue. You are always given examples to show you where particular rules apply and where you would use that particular structure. Every part of a lesson is followed by exercises where you are given an opportunity to revise and practise what you have learned and to use the language introduced in that part in similar situations. A lesson is completed with the dialogue for comprehension, which you should be able to understand.

The answers to the exercises and the translation of the dialogues for comprehension are given in the ‘Key to exercises’ section at the back of the book.

At the end of the book you are also given a summary of the grammatical points you have learned in the ‘Reference grammar’ section. You can refer to this section if you need a quick reference on a particular grammar point. Lastly, there are ‘Slovene-English’ and ‘English-Slovene’ glossaries.

About this book

This book is intended for beginners and requires no previous knowledge of the language. It can also be used by students with some knowledge of Slovene to revise or to improve their language skills. By working through the lessons you will be building up words and phrases and learning how they are connected and in which contexts they are used. The language used in the lessons is mostly conversational. As far as possible, the dialogues reflect the kind of language appropriate for the subject of the lesson. By the end of this course you will be able to communicate in most everyday situations.

in his dialect, he would not necessarily be understood by a speaker of another dialect. These dialects are spoken at home. At school, every Slovene is soon encouraged to speak standard Slovene in public. The Slovene taught in these lessons is that of ‘standard’ Slovene, but colloquial in style and vocabulary, and it will be understood by all Slovenes.
A simple guide to pronunciation

This is not a detailed account or an elocution lesson on how particular sounds are pronounced in particular places in Slovene literary language but a basic simple guide which should give you an idea of how the language is pronounced.

The Slovene language is mostly phonetic, which means that it is pronounced as it is written. Each letter has only one specific sound which makes reading and writing easy. It is very important to remember the correct sounds of the letters and once you have done so you will be able to read and write with hardly any mistakes.

Vowels

There are five vowels in Slovene: a, e, i, o, u. Each syllable contains a vowel. The letter r in some Slovene words replaces the vowel when it stands before a consonant, as in red (red) or rjav (brown), or when it stands between two consonants, as in Brnik (the airport in Ljubljana) or in vrt (garden). The sound of each vowel is pure and very clear.

Even though stress marks are not placed over the letters, there are rules of stress to be observed in the pronunciation of the Slovene vowels (see below).

Consonants

There are twenty consonants in Slovene. They can be voiced or unvoiced. They are pronounced as they are spelt (refer to the alphabet).

The voiced consonants are: b, d, g, j, l, m, n, r, v, z, ž.

The unvoiced consonants are: c, č, f, h, k, p, s, š, t.

Look carefully at the letters č, š, and ž. Also note how you pronounce j and h in Slovene.

Certain letters will at times be grouped with certain other letters and have a slightly different pronunciation. The same happens when they occupy a certain position in the word. For example:

When l is at the end of a word or placed after any other conso-
nant than j it is pronounced as w as in bel (white), popoldan (popowdan).

V is pronounced as v before vowels (raja 'exercise', voda 'water'), before the consonants r (rvt 'garden', vreme 'weather') and before vowels within a word (živeti 'to live', zvezek 'notebook'). When v is at the end of the word, after a vowel or before a consonant (except for r and l) it is pronounced as w, as in prav (OK), kovček (suitcase). When v is at the beginning of the word or when it appears between consonants or before two or more consonants it is pronounced as u as in vprašati (to ask), vhod (entrance). The Slovene r is pronounced strongly, slightly rolled. It is pronounced as er when it stands before another consonant or when it stands between two consonants.

In a few words where they appear, two identical vowels or consonants are pronounced as one long one, as in priimek (surname), oddelek (department).

You should practise pronouncing these and other sounds throughout the book.

Stress

Stress marks are not marked in Slovene. In most cases only one syllable of the word is stressed, which means that this syllable is pronounced slightly more strongly than other syllables. It isn't possible to predict which syllable the stress will fall on - in words which are formed from the same root the stress is often on a different syllable - so the syllable which is stressed must be memorized. Initially it is best to stress each syllable equally. This way you will soon be able to read long sentences with the correct Slovene pronunciation. Most important is that all sounds, both vowels and consonants, are pronounced clearly, strongly and confidently.

1 Živio, Robert!
Hello, Robert!

In this lesson you will learn about:
• Some forms of greeting and saying farewell
• The personal and some possessive pronouns
• The present tense of 'to be'
• Some masculine and feminine nouns
• Ways of addressing and introducing people
• How to ask and answer some simple questions

Dialogue 1

Ali si utrujen?
Are you tired?

Robert, an English journalist, has flown to Ljubljana for a year, to work there. An old friend of his, Matej, picks him up at the airport. He goes through customs, collects his suitcase and sees Matej waiting for him.

MATEJ: Živio, kako si?
ROBERT: Dobro, hvala. In ti?
MATEJ: Zelo dobro, hvala.
ROBERT: Ali si utrujen?
MATEJ: Ja, malo.
ROBERT: Hello, how are you?
MATEJ: Well, thank you. And you?
MATEJ: Very well, thank you.
ROBERT: Are you tired?
MATEJ: Yes, a little.
Language points

Meeting and greeting people in Slovenia

Slovenes usually introduce themselves by shaking hands and saying their surname and first name in more official situations or only a first name in casual situations.

Greetings

The standard greetings in Slovene are:

up to about 10 a.m. Dobro jutro. Good morning.

between 10 a.m. and 6 p.m. Dober dan. Good day.

after 6 p.m. Dober večer. Good evening.

You will see later in this lesson why we say dobro jutro but dober dan.

Farewells

at any time of the day Na svidenje. Goodbye.

late at night (also before going to bed) Lahko noč. Good night.

Friends usually greet each other with Živin (Hello) and Adijo (Bye).

Personal pronouns

jaz (I) mi (we)

(ti) (you) vi (you)

(on) (he) oni (they)

ona (she)

ono (it)

Present tense of biti (to be)

In the dialogue Metej asked Robert Ali si utrjen? Si (are) is actually one of the forms of the verb biti (to be). Biti is an irregular verb. You must simply memorize its different forms.

Unless you want to stress them, personal pronouns can be omitted when used as a subject because the ending of the verb indicates the person.
For example:
- Smo v Sloveniji. rather than Mi smo v Sloveniji. We are in Slovenia.
- Sem utrjen. rather than Jaz sem utrjen. I am tired.
- So na letališču. rather than Oni so na letališču. They are at the airport.

In the first few lessons the pronouns will be listed together with their verbs because it is easier to recognize the two together.

**How to ask a question**

Ali is used to indicate a question. You simply put it in front of the verb. You also reverse the word order, i.e. the verb comes before the personal pronoun. Note that Matej asks Robert: Ali si utrjen? (Are you tired?). Here are some more examples:

- Jaz sem v Sloveniji. I am in Slovenia.
- Ali sem (jaz) v Sloveniji? Am I in Slovenia?
- On je utrjen. He is tired.
- Ali je (on) utrjen? Is he tired?

The question word ali may, however, be omitted. As in the English translations of the examples below, you can show that you are asking a question by reversing the word order, i.e. putting the verb before the subject. Matej could have asked: Si utrjen? (Are you tired?). Some more examples:

- Jaz sem v Sloveniji. I am in Slovenia.
- Sem (jaz) v Sloveniji? Am I in Slovenia?
- On je utrjen. He is tired.
- Je (on) utrjen? Is he tired?

**Countries**

Here are a few Slovene names for countries:

- država country

**How to use v (in)**

In Slovene the endings of nouns depend on their function in the sentence. When it is in subject position, for example, the name of the country is Slovenija. When it follows a preposition the ending of the noun changes. After the preposition v (in) the final a becomes i. You would, for example, say v Sloveniji, or v Angliji.

**Exercise 1**

Re-arrange these utterances to make a conversation:

- Jelena: Zelo sem utrjen.
- Jaz sam utrjen. Zelo dobro, hvala, in ti?

**Exercise 2**

Greet or say farewell to these people:

1. It is 7 a.m. and you have met a neighbour at the bus stop.
2. It is 4 p.m. and you are leaving work.
3. It is 8 p.m. and you meet three friends in front of the cinema.
4. It is 11:30 p.m. and after having watched a television programme with your host family you are going to bed.
5. It is 2 p.m. and you meet your landlady on your way to work.
6. It is 7 p.m. and you meet someone you know slightly at a party.
7. It is 11 p.m. and you are leaving a friend's house.

**Exercise 3**

1. You get a surprise phone call from a friend and you are not sure where she is. Ask her if she is in Italy / in Ljubljana / at the airport / in a restaurant / in a pub.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>država</th>
<th>country</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anglija</td>
<td>England</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slovenija</td>
<td>Slovenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amerika</td>
<td>America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nemčija</td>
<td>Germany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italija</td>
<td>Italy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Španija</td>
<td>Spain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Francija</td>
<td>France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rusija</td>
<td>Russia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2 You are trying to trace an old friend, Milan. How would you ask someone if he is: in Germany / in Slovenia / in England / in America / in Spain?
3 You wake up after a nightmare and you have no idea where you are. How would you ask someone if you are at the airport / in Ljubljana / in Slovenia / at home / in a pub?

Exercise 4

Answer the questions using the personal pronouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ali je Robert utrujen?</td>
<td>Ja, ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ali je Tanja v Angliji?</td>
<td>Ja, ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ali je Sabina v Sloveniji?</td>
<td>Ja, ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ali smo mi danes doma?</td>
<td>Ja, ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ali je Sandra dobro?</td>
<td>Ja, ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 5

Fill in the blanks in this dialogue:

SANDE: Dohro jutro, Peter. Kako ... ?
PETER: Zelo ... , hvala. In ... ?
SANDE: Dobro, ... Ali je Marko ... Sloveniji?
PETER: Ja, Marko ... v Ljubljani. In Sabina?
SANDE: Sabina je ... Italiji.

Dialogue 2

Naprej!

Come in!

While Robert is in Slovenia he makes a social call at the house of Marko Koren. Mrs Koren answers the door.

ROBERT: Good evening. I am Robert Brown. Is Mr Koren at home?

GOSPA KOREN: Ja, je doma.

ROBERT: Danes ni v službi.

MARKO KOREN: O, dober večer. Kako ste?

ROBERT: Dobro, hvala. In vi?

MARKO KOREN: Dohro. Naprej, prosim! To je moja žena, Anita.

ROBERT: Good evening, I am Robert Brown. How are you?

MARKO KOREN: Yes, he is (at home).

MR. KOREN: He is not at work today.

MARKO KOREN: Oh, good evening. How are you?

ROBERT: Well, thank you. And you?

MARKO KOREN: I'm fine. Please, come in!

This is my wife, Anita.

Vocabulary

obisk a visit
ni is not
v službi at work
naprej come in
prosim please
to je this is
moja my
žena my wife

Language points

Familiar and polite forms of address

Slovene, like many other languages, has both familiar and formal pronouns for addressing people. Ti (’you’, singular) is the familiar
form used with friends, members of the family or children. Vi ('you', plural) is the polite form used when talking to people you don't know and in all official contexts.

When you are not sure which form to use it is always safer to use the polite form. People will soon tell you to use the familiar form if they want you to.

Addressing people
You address a man as gospod (Mr) and a woman as gospa (Mrs). (Note that Robert asks Je gospod Koren doma?)
You address an unmarried woman as gospodična (Miss). Slovene does not yet have an equivalent for 'Ms'.

When meeting people the usual question, 'How are you?', is kako ste? in polite form and kako si? in the familiar.

Note that the conversation between Robert and Matej, who are friends, was in the familiar form whilst the conversation between Robert and the people he visits was in the polite form.

Introducing people
When you introduce someone you say, as in English, 'This is . . .' Note that Mr Koren says: To je maja žena.

To je Robert. This is Robert.

You use the expression me veseli when you are introduced to somebody. It means 'Nice to meet you'.

The negative form of biti (to be)
With most verbs you make the negative construction simply by putting a negative word before the verb (as we shall see in lesson 3). The verb 'to be', however, is irregular even in its negative form.

(jaz) nisem I am not (mi) nismo we are not
(ti) nisi you are not (vi) niste you are not
(on) ni he is not (oni) niso they are not
(ona) ni she is not
(ono) ni it is not

Note that Mrs Koren says:

Answering questions which require a 'yes/no' answer
When you answer a question with ja (yes) or ne (no) you usually answer by repeating the information asked for.

Ali je gospod Koren doma? Is Mr Koren at home?
Ja, gospod Koren je doma. Yes, he is (at home).
Ne, gospod Koren ni doma. No, he isn't (at home).

Masculine, feminine and neuter nouns
You will remember that in the first part of this lesson you learned

Dobro jutro. Good morning.
Dobro dan. Good day.

Dobro is the neuter form of the adjective; dober is the masculine form. We say dobro jutro because jutro is a neuter noun and dober dan because dan is a masculine noun. The ending of the adjective always agrees with the ending of the noun.

There are three genders in Slovene: masculine, feminine and neuter. In English what is masculine by nature (man, father, boy) is referred to as 'he' and what is feminine by nature (woman, wife, girl) is referred to as 'she'. This rule, however, does not apply in Slovene; for example, dekle means 'girl' but it is of neuter gender. You must memorize the gender of the Slovene nouns. When important, the gender of the nouns will be indicated with the following abbreviations: m. (for masculine), f. (for feminine), n. (for neuter).

There are no definite rules for determining the gender. These few clues may be helpful:
1 Nouns ending in a are almost always feminine:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Gender</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>restavracija</td>
<td>restaurant</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gostilna</td>
<td>pub</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>žena</td>
<td>wife</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Nouns ending in a consonant are almost always masculine:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Gender</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dan</td>
<td>day</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>večer</td>
<td>evening</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prijatelj</td>
<td>friend</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Nouns ending in o or in e are almost always neuter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Gender</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>letališče</td>
<td>airport</td>
<td>neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jutro</td>
<td>morning</td>
<td>neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dekle</td>
<td>girl</td>
<td>neuter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Possessive pronouns

In Slovene the possessive pronouns (my, your, etc.) have a masculine, a feminine and a neuter form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moj</td>
<td>moja</td>
<td>moje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tvoj</td>
<td>tvoja</td>
<td>tvoje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>njegov</td>
<td>njegova</td>
<td>njegovo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>njena</td>
<td>njena</td>
<td>njeno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naš</td>
<td>naša</td>
<td>naše</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vaš</td>
<td>vaša</td>
<td>vaše</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>njihov</td>
<td>njihova</td>
<td>njihovo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

My, mine
Your, yours
His, its
Her, hers
Our, ours
Their, theirs

When the possessive pronouns are used as adjectives (as in 'my wife') they must agree with the noun they refer to.

In this lesson you will only practise the pronouns corresponding to 'my' and 'your'.

Exercise 6

Insert the correct form of the verb 'to be':

1 Robert ... malo utrujen.
2 Ali ... gospod Koren doma?

Exercise 7

How would you introduce the following people to someone: your wife, Robert, your friend (male), Mr Koren, your husband.

Exercise 8

Are these statements about you true (T) or false (F)?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statement</th>
<th>True (T)</th>
<th>False (F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Danes sem malo utrujen.</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Moja žena je v Nemečki.</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Jaz sem v Angliji.</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Danes nisem v službi.</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Danes sem zelo zaseden.</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 9

Ask if these people are at home: Bojan, Mrs Kobal, Marija, Mr Koren, Mrs Koren.

Exercise 10

Say that these people are not at work: Mr Dolenc, Jana, Samo, your wife, Mrs Koren.

Exercise 11

Choose the answers which fit the two dialogues in the lesson:

1 Ali je Robert v Sloveniji?
   (a) Ja, Robert je v Sloveniji.
   (b) Ne, Robert ni v Sloveniji.
2 Ali je Robert utrujen?
   (a) Ja, Robert je malo utrujen.
   (b) Ne, Robert ni utrujen.
3 Ali je gospod Koren v službi?
   (a) Ja, on je v službi.
   (b) Ne, on ni v službi.
4 Ali je gospa Koren doma?
   (a) Ja, ona je doma.
   (b) Ne, ona ni doma.
5 Ali je gospa Koren v Ameriki?
   (a) Ja, ona je v Ameriki.
   (b) Ne, ona ni v Ameriki.

Exercise 12

Answer these questions about yourself.

1 Ali si ti v Angliji?
2 Ali je tvoja žena v Sloveniji?
3 Ali si danes utrujen?
4 Ali si v službi?
5 Ali si danes zvečer doma?

Exercise 13

Match the response on the right with the statement or question on the left:

1 Živio, kako si?
   (a) Ja, malo.
   (b) Hvala.
   (c) Me veseli.
   (d) Dobro, hvala.
   (e) Ne, gospa Koren ni doma.
2 Ali si utrujen?
3 Naprej!
4 Ali je gospa Koren doma?
5 To je moja žena, Anita.

Exercise 14

Are these words masculine, feminine or neuter?

1 gostilna m. f. n.
2 jutro m. f. n.
3 zvečer m. f. n.
4 mama m. f. n.
5 mož m. f. n.

6 dan m. f. n.
7 letališče m. f. n.

Exercise 15

Pronunciation exercise. You'll have noticed that two or three consonants often follow one another. All of them have to be pronounced firmly. Let's practise:

- Dobro jutro.
- Živio, Branko.
- On je moj prijatelj.
- To je letališče Brnik.
- Kako ste? Dobro, hvala.
- Lahko noč.

Dialogue for comprehension

Robert has been invited to supper at the house of Mr Stopar (a friend of his friend, Matej), whom he has met once before. Find out where Robert's girlfriend is.

Gospod Stopar: Živio, Robert. Kako si?
Robert: Dobro, hvala. In ti?
Robert: Hvala.
Robert: Me veseli, Robert.
Gospod Stopar: In to je moj prijatelj, Tomaž Rataj.
Robert: Ne, ona ni tukaj.
Tomaž Rataj: Ali je ona v Ljubljani?
Ali si v sredo doma?
Are you at home on Wednesday?

In this lesson you will learn about:
- Days of the week
- Countries and their inhabitants
- How to make arrangements on the telephone
- The present tense of 'to have' and some common phrases using this verb
- More nouns and adjectives and the way they are used
- How to ask and answer the questions 'who' and 'what'

Dialogue 1

Prosim!
Hello!

Denis has returned from his holidays in Spain. He has promised to show Sabina his photographs. He telephones her to arrange a day.

SABINA: Prosim!
SABINA: Ne, žal mi je. V torek nimam časa. Kaj pa v sredo?
DENIS: Ne, ob sredah imam jaz angleški tečaj. In v četrtek?
SABINA: Ja, prav. V četrtek sem ves dan doma. V četrtek zvečer! Se že veselim!
DENIS: Jaz tudi. Adijo!
Sabina: Hello!
Denis: Hello, Sabina. This is Denis. I have the photographs. Have you got time on Tuesday evening?
Sabina: No, I am sorry. I don't have time on Tuesday. What about Wednesday?
Denis: No, on Wednesdays I have my English course. And on Thursday?
Sabina: Yes, OK. On Thursday I am at home all day. On Thursday evening! I am looking forward to it already!
Denis: So am I. Bye!

Vocabulary

imaj you have v sredo on Wednesday
v tork on Tuesday prav fine, OK, correct
čas time angleški tečaj English course
čal mi je I am sorry ves dan all day
nimaj I don't have v četrtek on Thursday
kaj pa? what about veselim se I am looking forward to

Note: The word pa has various meanings. It is used a lot in Slovene. It can be used as a conjunction word to mean 'and' or it can be used to mean 'about' as in Kaj pa v sredo? (What about on Wednesday?).

Language points

Speaking on the telephone

When you first answer the telephone you say prosim. If you are calling, it is polite to say who you are: for example, Dobr dan, Marko pri telefonu, or Marko tučaj.

Pri telefonu literally means 'by the telephone'. In this context it simply means 'speaking'. If you don't introduce yourself the person at the other end might ask you: Kdo je pri telefonu? (Who is speaking?). If you are calling, for example, Marko's home number you ask: Ali je Marko doma? If you are calling him at work you say: Ali je Marko tam? In both cases, the person at the other end will probably say: Sumo trenutek! or Trenutek prosim! meaning 'Just a moment!'

It is useful if you understand the names of important telephone numbers usually listed on the telephone or in any telephone box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pomembne telefonske številke</th>
<th>Important telephone numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>policija</td>
<td>police</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gasilci</td>
<td>fire brigade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prva pomoč</td>
<td>first aid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splošne informacije</td>
<td>general information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pomoč na cesti</td>
<td>car breakdown service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taksig</td>
<td>taxi service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turistične informacije</td>
<td>tourist information</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Days of the week

The days of the week are:

punedeljek Monday ptek Friday
torek Tuesday sobota Saturday
sreda Wednesday nedelja Sunday
četrtek Thursday

In Slovene the days of the week are spelt with a small letter. With the days of the week, on is expressed with the preposition v.

Note that when you use v the days of the week ending with a change their ending to o.

v punedeljek on Monday v ptek on Friday
v torek on Tuesday v sobota on Saturday
v sreda on Wednesday v nedelja on Sunday
v četrtek on Thursday
When a certain action takes place on a certain day of each week you use the preposition ob to express this.

Days of the week ending in a take an h ending and the others drop the semi-silent e and take an ih ending.

If you want to ask the question 'when' you say kdaj?

- ob ponedeljkih on Mondays
- ob petkih on Fridays
- ob torkih on Tuesdays
- ob sobotah on Saturdays
- ob sredah on Wednesdays
- ob nedeljah on Sundays
- ob cetrtekih on Thursdays

When you want to say that something is happening on a particular day, like 'this Tuesday', you say ta torck.

**Present tense of imeti (to have)**

In the dialogue Denis asks Sahina: Ali imaš v torck čas? He also says: Ob sredah imam jaz angleški tečaj. These show forms of the verb 'to have'.

| (jaz) | imam | I have |
| (ti)  | imaš | you have |
| (on)  | ima | he has |
| (ona) | ima | she has |
| (ono) | ima | it has |

**(mi)** imamo we have
**(vi)** imate you have
**(oni)** imajo they have

**Negative form of imeti (to have)**

Sabina answers: V torck nimam časa. Nimam is a negative form of the verb 'to have'.

| (jaz) | nimam | I don't have |
| (ti)  | nimamo | you don't have |
| (on)  | nimamo | he doesn't have |
| (ona) | nimajo | she doesn't have |
| (ono) | nimamo | it doesn't have |

**(mi)** nimo we don't have
**(vi)** nimate you don't have
**(oni)** nimate they don't have

Here are a few common expressions using 'to have'. You only need to conjugate 'to have' and you can refer to whoever you like. For example:

| smola | bad luck |
| seeča | luck |

**Note:** You have seen that Sahina said in the dialogue nimam časa. Sreča, for example, means 'luck' but you say imam srečo or nimam sreče. The nouns following 'to have' get different endings and the nouns following a negative form of 'to have' also get different endings. These are case endings and you will see more about them later.

**To be at home**

Doma means 'at home'. It usually follows 'to be'. Note how Sahina says in the dialogue: V cetrtek sem ves dan doma. Here are a few more examples, using doma:

- Ob nedeljah sem zmeraj doma.
- Žal mi je, v torck nisem doma.
- I'm always at home on Sundays.
- I'm sorry, I'm not at home on Tuesday.

**Exercise 1**

Match the words in the left column to those in the right:

| Tuesday | petek |
| on Saturday | ob nedeljah |
| Wednesday | torck |
| on Sundays | v soboto |
| Friday | ponedeljek |
| Monday | sreda |

**Exercise 2**

Ask your friend, Miran, if he has time on Tuesday / on Saturday / on Sundays / on Friday / on Mondays.

**Exercise 3**

Tell your friend that you're sorry but you don't have time on Tuesday / on Fridays / on Sunday / on Saturdays / on Monday.
Exercise 4

1 Say that you are at work on these days: on Monday, on Wednesday, on Friday.
2 Say that your female friend is at home on these days: on Tuesday, on Thursday, on Saturday.

Exercise 5

Write a short summary of the following telephone conversation:

Sabina doesn't have time on Tuesday. Denis has no luck. Denis doesn't have time on Wednesdays. Sabina has bad luck. Sabina is at home all day on Thursday and Denis also has time on Thursday evening.

Dialogue 2

Kdo je to?

Who is this?

It is Thursday evening and Denis is at Sabina's house. He is showing her his photographs and answering her questions.

SABINA: Kdo je to?
DENIS: To je moj dober prijatelj John. On je Anglež.
SABINA: Ali je Španka?
DENIS: Ne, Francozinja je.
SABINA: Ona je zelo velika!
DENIS: Imaš prav! Velika je.
SABINA: Kakšna lepa slika! Kje ste tukaj?
DENIS: Tukaj smo v Barceloni.
SABINA: O, Barcelona je lepo mesto. Kaj je ta velika hiša?
DENIS: To je naš hotel.
SABINA: In čigav je ta avto?
DENIS: To je moj novi avto! Tukaj je, v garaži!
SABINA: Who is this?
DENIS: This is a good friend of mine, John. He is English. And that is his girlfriend Clara.

SABINA: Is she Spanish?
DENIS: No, she is French.
SABINA: She is very tall!
DENIS: You're right! She is tall.
SABINA: What a lovely photo! Where are you here?
DENIS: Here we're in Barcelona.
SABINA: Oh, Barcelona is a beautiful town. What is this big house?
DENIS: This is our hotel.
SABINA: And whose car is this?
DENIS: This is my new car! It's here, in the garage!

Vocabulary

kdo? who?
lepo beautiful
mesto town
hotel
čigav? whose?
novi new
avto car
garaža garage

Note: punca means 'a girl' and fant means 'a boy'. These words are used when you want to say that someone is your girlfriend or boyfriend. For example:

Tanja je moja punca. Tanja is my girlfriend.
DENIS je moj fant. Denis is my boyfriend.

Language points

'A' and 'the'

Slovene has no article: 'photograph' and 'the photograph' both translate as fotografija. This becomes more difficult when translating from Slovene into English where the context of the text has to be taken into account.

Adjectival endings

In the dialogue Sabina said Clara je velika, because Clara is feminine in gender. Had she been describing John she would have said
John je velik, because John is masculine in gender. Mesto (town) is neutral in gender, and for the town Barcelona she'd say Barcelona je veliko mesto.

All Slovene adjectives have three endings, depending on whether they modify a feminine, a masculine or a neutral noun. Using the adjective velik (big), for example, you say:

velik hotel m.
velika hiša f.
velik mesto n.

The stem of the adjective is usually given in the masculine form. Masculine adjectives normally end in a consonant. All adjectives modifying a feminine noun take an a ending and the adjectives modifying a neutral noun usually take an o ending and occasionally an e ending.

The semi-silent e usually drops from the masculine form and then the endings a, o, or e are added. This is the case with dober (good); you have learned in lesson 1 how you say dober dan, dobro jutro or dobra prijateljica. Sometimes the endings are simply added to the stem, as in lep hotel, lepa hiša, lepo mesto.

Here are the adjectives you have learned by now together with their opposite meanings:

- majhen-velik: small-big
- dober-slab: good-bad
- lahko-težek: easy-difficult, or light-heavy
- nov-star: new-old
- lep-grd: beautiful-ugly

Note: Whenever you use the possessive pronouns as adjectives the same rules apply to them, i.e. they take the endings of the noun they modify:

moj, tvoj, njen prijatelj my, your, her friend (male)
moja, tvoja, njena prijateljica my, your, her friend (female)

When the verb 'to be' follows the words 'this' or 'these' you say to in Slovene, regardless of number and gender. For example:

To je moj prijatelj. This is my friend.
To so moji prijatelji. These are my friends.

When a noun follows the word 'this' then it has to modify the noun in number and gender. For example:

Ta hiša je velika. This house is big.
To mesto je veliko. This town is big.

'This' and 'that'

Pronouns stand in place of nouns. In lesson 1 you learned about personal pronouns (I, you, he, etc.) and possessive pronouns (mine, yours, his, etc.). Words like English 'this' and 'that' can function as pronouns ('What is this?') or as adjectives ('This house is beautiful'). They are demonstrative pronouns and in Slovene they have masculine, feminine, neuter and plural forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ta</td>
<td>tista</td>
<td>tisto</td>
<td>this/these</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tisti</td>
<td>tista</td>
<td>tisti</td>
<td>that/those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oni</td>
<td>ona</td>
<td>ono</td>
<td>that/those</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Slovene tisti points to people or things which are a little bit further away and are dealt with more indirectly; oni points to people or things which are very far away in place or time. Tisti and oni are both translated by 'that' in English.

Čigav/-a/-o? (whose?)

The possessive pronouns answer the question 'whose?', in Slovene čišav (m.), čigava (f.), čigavo (n.). When you use the possessive pronouns as pronouns you use the neuter form. For example:

To je moje. This is mine.
Ali je to njegov? Is this his?
To ni naše. This is not ours.

Countries and their inhabitants

In Slovene, nouns indicating nationalities have a different form for a male and a female inhabitant of a country and are spelt with a capital letter as in English. Note how Denis explains to Sabina that John is Anglež but his girlfriend is Francozinja.

Here are the Slovene names for some countries and their inhabitants:
Adjectives indicating the language are spelt with a small letter. Jezik means 'language'; its literal meaning is 'tongue'.

angleški jezik  španski jezik
slovenski jezik  francoski jezik
nemški jezik  ruski jezik
italijanski jezik

**Questions kdo (who) and kaj (what)**

The question Kdo je to? means 'Who is this?' and Kaj je to? means 'What is this?'. The answer to both these questions is To je ... (This is ...) or To ni ... (This is not ...). If you want to ask whether this is someone or something you say Ali je to ...? as in English Is this ...? The question word ali may be omitted and you can just say Je to ...? However, it is not wrong to use ali. In order to help you understand that a sentence indicates a question, ali will always be used in the first few lessons. Here are a few common phrases using these constructions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>važno, pomembno</th>
<th>important</th>
<th>nemogoče</th>
<th>impossible</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>res</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>vse</td>
<td>everything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mogoče</td>
<td>possible</td>
<td>nič</td>
<td>nothing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ali je to važno?   Ja, to je važno. or Ne, to ni važno.
Ali je to res?     Ja, to je res. or Ne, to ni res.
Ali je to mogoče?  Ja, to je mogoče. or Ne, to ni mogoče. or To je nemogoče.

**Ali; ali ... ali (or; either ... or)**

Ali is, apart from the word which indicates a question, also a conjunction word meaning 'or', as in Ali je to on ali ne? (Is this him or not?). When you want to use the English construction either ... or, you simply say ali ... ali, for example:

Ali vse ali nič.   Either everything or nothing.
Ali ti ali on.      Either you or him.
Biti ali ne biti ... To be or not to be ...

**Double negative**

Whilst it is wrong in English to use a double negative, you must use it in Slovene. Negative words, such as nikoli (never), nič (nothing), niheče (nobody) require a negative verb. Here are a few common expressions where a double negative is used:

To ni nič.        This is nothing.
On ni nikoli utrujen. He is never tired.
Niheče ni tikaj.  Nobody is here.

**You know this?**

You have learned that to form a question in Slovene you need the question word ali. As in English, you can also form a question by your voice intonation, as in:

To je vse?        This is all?
On je v Sloveniji? He is in Slovenia?

**More about nouns**

You have seen by now that the endings of Slovene nouns change. There are six cases, each of them having a particular function and, as you have seen, three genders - masculine, feminine and neuter.
Slovene nouns are divided into four groups, known as declensions. They are as follows:

First declension
Into this group come nouns of feminine gender that end in a, for example:

- hiša house
- garaža garage
- prijateljica female friend
- sreča luck

Second declension
Into this group come nouns of feminine gender ending in a consonant, for example:

- cerkev church
- luč light

Third declension
Into this group come nouns of masculine gender, for example:

- hotel hotel
- telefon telephone
- avto car

Fourth declension
Into this group come nouns of neuter gender ending in o or e, for example:

- jabolko apple
- vreme weather
- mesto town

Knowing about this will be useful to you later when we look into the way in which Slovene cases work.

The nominative case
The subject of a sentence is the noun or pronoun which governs its verb. You can find the subject of a sentence by putting the questions Kdo? or Kaj? ('who?' or 'what') in front of the verb. In the sentence To je moj prijatelj John, John is the subject because 'John' answers the question 'Who is this?'. In the sentence To je naš hotel, hotel is the subject because it answers the question 'What is this?'. Whenever you get the answer to the question 'who?' or 'what?' you get the noun in the nominative case. You will find all the nouns listed in the vocabulary in the nominative case even though you might have found them in the passage with a different ending. This is because of their function; in that particular sentence they were in a different case.

Exercise 6
You are telling a friend about some men you met at a party. Following the example below, tell your friend what you found rather amusing:

Marko/Slowence
Marko je Slovenec, ampak njegova punca ni Slovenka.

1 Patrice/Francoz
2 Vittorio/Italian
3 Martin/Anglez
4 Jaroslav/Rus
5 Pedro/Spance

Exercise 7
You are at a bus stop waiting for your friend. You are talking to some women when your friend arrives. Introduce them to him and tell him where they are from, following the example below:

Katja/Slovene
To je Katja. Ona je Slovenka.

1 Lynda/English
2 Pamela/American
3 Gusti/German
4 Maria/Spanish
5 Laura/Italian

Exercise 8
A colleague from work telephones you because he'd like to meet you. Fill in your part of the dialogue as suggested:

- Dobre! The telephone is ringing, answer it!
YOUR COLLEAGUE: Živio, Marko tukaj. Ali imaš jutri zvečer čas?
YOU: Say that you're sorry, but you don't have time tomorrow evening.
YOUR COLLEAGUE: Kaj pa v četrtek zvečer?
YOU: Say that is fine. You are at home all day on Thursday.
YOUR COLLEAGUE: Moja prijateljica je tukaj v Sloveniji.
YOU: Ask if she is English.
YOUR COLLEAGUE: Ne, Italijanka je.

Exercise 9

Ask the people below if they are at home on the following days in the evening
1 Darko/Tuesday
2 Lara/Thursday
3 Peter/Monday
4 Darja/Saturday
5 Nataša/Friday

Exercise 10

Whilst waiting in front of a telephone box you have overheard this conversation. Fill in the correct forms of 'to be' and 'to have':
Ali ... v četrtek čas?
Ne, v četrtek ... časa. V četrtek ... v službi. Ampak v petek ... čas.
Imaš srečo! Jaz ... v petek ves dan doma. Moja punca ... v Ljubljani. Ona ... Angležinja.

Exercise 11

Answer these questions as suggested!
1 Ali ima Tim prav ali ne?
Ja, ...
2 Ali ima ona srečo?
Ne, ...
3 Ali imaš danes zvečer čas?
Ne, ...
4 Ali je to res ali ne?

Ja, ...
5 Ali je to prav ali ne?
Ne, ...
6. Ali je to važno?
Ja, ...

Exercise 12

1 A friend who is going on holiday for three months wants you to join him. Say to him: This is impossible!
2 Someone says to you: 'Did you know that Slovenia was bigger than England?' Say: This is not true!
3 A friend tells you that he is going to go abroad next week and does not have a passport. Say to him: But this is very important!
4 He also tells you how he knows some people who forgot their passports and were let through the border anyway. Say: This isn't right!
5 Your friend, after a long argument with you, eventually says to you You're right!

Exercise 13

Match the adjectives on the left in their correct ending with the nouns on the right and say what they mean:

majhen/-hna/-o avto
dobert/-bral/-o jutro
lep/-a/-o hiša
velik/-a/-o mesto
težek/-zkal/-o lečeja
slab/-a/-o vreme

Exercise 14

Put the twenty words below into five groups so that they will be connected by meaning
Španka Rusija Francuzinja Slovenka
Slovenec prva pomoč četrtek Američan
sreda gasilci Francoz
policija ponedeljek Nemka pomoč na cesti
Nemčija Anglež Francija Anglija
Exercise 15 

Pronunciation exercise. (a) Although the Slovene names for many countries are very similar to the English names, they are pronounced differently. Let’s pronounce these countries in the following sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Velika Britanija</th>
<th>Great Britain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sosed</td>
<td>neighbour (male)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Robert is iz Velike Britanije.
Anglija je lepa država.
Slovenija je zelo majhna država.
V Nemčiji in v Avstriji govorijo nemški jezik.
Francija, Španija in Italija so zahodno-europske države.
Njegov sosed gre v petek v Rusijo.

(b) The sentences you read out were all positive statements. You have learned that you can ask questions by intonation alone. Read out the sentences again imagining they had a question mark after them.

Dialogue for comprehension

Denis telephones Matej at work to arrange to meet him. Matej, however, is busy these days. See what he is doing.

Tajnica: Prosim?
Denis: Dober dan, Denis Goloh pri telefonu. Ali je Matej Novak tam?
Tajnica: Samo trenutek, prosim.
Matej: Prosim?
Denis: Živio Matej, Denis tukaj.

Matej: O, si že doma, kako si?
Denis: Odlično. In kako si ti?
Denis: Kdo je Robert?
Matej: Imaš prav. Že ves teden dežuje.
Denis: Kdaj pride Jane?
Matej: V četrtek popoldne.
Denis: Ali je Anglečina?
Matej: Ja, Anglečina je.
Denis: Ali imaš za v petek zvezanje v planu?
Matej: Ne še.
Denis: Moja prijateljica Sabina pride k meni. Ona govorita zelo dobro angleško. Pridite na večerjo!
Denis: Ampak Matej, ali nimaš ti ob sobotah nogometni trening?
Matej: Ja, ampak to ni tako pomembno.
3 Ura je tri
It is three o’clock

In this lesson you will learn about:
- Words and expressions about transport
- How to ask what time it is and how to tell the time
- Some adjectives describing physical state and emotions
- The Slovene cardinal and ordinal numbers
- The months of the year
- The professions
- How to express a possibility
- How to conjugate verbs in the present tense

Dialogue 1

Oprostite ...

Excuse me ...

Robert’s girlfriend Jane, who is also half-Slovene, is travelling to Ljubljana to visit him. Her watch says that the time of arrival has passed and she is anxious not to miss her station. As the train is approaching a town she addresses the passenger sitting next to her.

JANE: Oprostite, ali smo že v Ljubljani?

POTNIK: Ne še, še deset minut. Vlak ima zamudo.

JANE: Ura je že tri. Pozni smo.

JANE: Excuse me, are we in Ljubljana yet?

PASSENGER: Not yet, another ten minutes. The train is late.

JANE: It is already three o’clock. We’re late.

Vocabulary

- oprostite: excuse me
- minuta: minute
- vlak: train
- zamudo: delay

- ura: time
- že: already
- pozni smo: we are late

Language points

Excuse me ...

Whenever you want to approach somebody with a question, draw attention or apologise, you say oprostite when you are speaking in polite form or oprosti when you are speaking in familiar form. It means both ‘excuse me’ and ‘I am sorry’.

When you say that a train, a bus or a plane is late you use the expression imeti zamudo. It literally means ‘to have a delay’.

For example:

Avtobus ima vsak dan zamudo.
Letalo ima danes zamudo.
Vlak nima nikoli zamude.

The bus is late every day.
The plane is late today.
The train is never late.

When you want to say that you are going somewhere by car, by plane, etc., you express this with the preposition z, which means ‘with’. In other words, in Slovene, you say that you go somewhere ‘with a car’, ‘with a plane’. When you use z, nouns take a different ending because z indicates the instrumental case, about which you will see more in lesson 13. Here are a few expressions using the preposition z with words for transport:

z železnico by rail
z vlakom by train
z avtom by car
z letalom by plane
z ladjo by ship

When you say that a person is late you use the expression biti pozlen (to be late). For example:
Robert, you are always late.
Jane is never late.
I'm sorry, we are late today.
When you say that someone is on time you use the expression biti točen (to be on time). For example:
Jaz nisem nikoli točen.
Ona je zmeraj točna.
Mi smo danes točni.
Notice how the adjectives pozen and točen change their endings depending on who is speaking, i.e. if a man is speaking he says pozen sem, if a woman is speaking she says poznana. In lesson 1 Robert tells Matej that he is a little tired (malo utrujen). A woman would have said malo utrujena. Here are some more adjectives describing physical states and emotions. As in English, you use these adjectives with 'to be', which you conjugate to indicate whom you are referring to.

biti lačen to be hungry
biti žejen to be thirsty
biti zaspan to be sleepy
biti prehlajen to have a cold

Another ten minutes!
The passenger said to Jane Še 10 minut. Minuta means 'minute' but with the numbers from 5 onwards the t ending drops and you say 5, 10, 15 minut. The same rule applies to ura (hour). You would say Na vlaku smo že 6 ur.

Is this place free?
When you are about to take a seat somewhere and you want to check that it is free you say:
Ali je tukaj prosto?
The answer is likely to be:
Ja, prosto je.
Ne, zasedeno je.

Numerals in Slovene

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardinal</th>
<th>Ordinal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 nič</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 eden (when used on its own)</td>
<td>prvi-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 en (m.), ena (f.), eno (n.) (when used with a noun)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 dva (m.), dve (f.), dve (n.)</td>
<td>drugi-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 trije (m.), tri (f.), tri (n.)</td>
<td>tretji-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 štirje (m.), štiri (f.), štiri (n.)</td>
<td>četrst-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 pet</td>
<td>peti-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 šest</td>
<td>šestih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 sedem</td>
<td>sedmi-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 osem</td>
<td>osemal-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 devet</td>
<td>devetih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 deset</td>
<td>deseti-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 enajst</td>
<td>enajstih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 dvainajst</td>
<td>dvainajstih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 trinajst</td>
<td>trinajstih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 štirinajst</td>
<td>štirinajstih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 petnajst</td>
<td>petnajstih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 šestnajst</td>
<td>šestnajstih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 sedmnajst</td>
<td>sedmnajstih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 osmnajst</td>
<td>osmnajstih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 devetnajst</td>
<td>devetnajstih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 dvajset</td>
<td>dvajstih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 trideset</td>
<td>tridesetih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 štirideset</td>
<td>štiridesetih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 petdeset</td>
<td>petdesetih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 šestdeset</td>
<td>šestdesetih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 sedemdeset</td>
<td>sedemdesetih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 osmdeset</td>
<td>osmdesetih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90 devetdeset</td>
<td>devetdesetih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 enaindvajset</td>
<td>enaindvajsetih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 dvaindvajset</td>
<td>dvaindvajsetih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 triindvajset</td>
<td>triindvajsetih-al-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 štirindvajset</td>
<td>štirindvajsetih-al-o</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In Slovene the months of the year are not spelt with a capital letter.
When you want to say that something is happening in a particular month you do not translate the preposition 'in'. You simply say, for example, junija, and this means 'in June'.
All the months of the year are masculine in gender.

The date

The question 'What date is it today?' is Katerega smo danes? You can say Danes je ... or Danes smo ... For the time being it is better if you use the first example (i.e. Danes je ...) where the numbers don’t have any endings.
The dates are written in the following manner in Slovene:
4. 5. 1873        4 May 1873
This would be read out as:
četrti petiš osemsto triinsedemdeset
osemdeset dvanajsto tisoč devetstodvetindevetdeset

Useful expressions of time
vedno, zmeraj always včasih sometimes
nikoli never redko rarely
po navadi, navadno usually

Telephone numbers

The telephone numbers in Slovenia consist of five, six or seven figures. When you give someone a telephone number you read it out as follows:
25 438 petindvajset štiri osemsto triosedeset
475 834 štiri osemstosedemdeset osemdeset štiri osemstosemsto triosedeset
132 712 sto dvainstosedemstotisest osemstosedemstotisest

You can also read out the numbers individually.
Exercise 1

Select the two possible responses you could give to someone who asks you the following questions:

1 Oprostite, ali smo že v Ljubljani?
   (a) Ja, to je Ljubljana.
   (b) Ne še, še deset minut.
   (c) Ura je točno tri.

2 Ali ima avtobus zamudo?
   (a) Vlak je danes pozen.
   (b) Ja, avtobus ima danes zamudo.
   (c) Ne, avtobus nima zamude.

3 Ali si žejen?
   (a) Ja, prehlajen sem.
   (b) Ne, nisem žejen.
   (c) Ja, Jcjen in ladjen sem.

4 Ali je Tanja zadovoljna?
   (a) Ne, ona ni nikoli zadovoljna.
   (b) Ja, zelo je zadovoljna.
   (c) Ja, Tanja je danes lada.

5 Ali je tukaj prosto?
   (a) Ja, to je London.
   (b) Ne, tukaj ni prosto.
   (c) Ja, prosto je.

Exercise 2

Tell your friend who is visiting you in your country that the bus / the train / the plane is sometimes late.

Exercise 3

You are in Slovenia and take weekend trips. The bus seems to be always late on Fridays. Approach the man sitting next to you and ask him:

Ask: 1 Excuse me, is the bus always late on Fridays?
   Ne, ne vedno. Večasih.

Say: 2 It is already 10 o'clock. We're very late!
   Še pet minut in smo tukaj.

Say: 3 Thank you.
   Ali ste Slovenec?.

Say: 4 No, I'm English.

Exercise 4

Tell a colleague at work that your telephone number is 274 837 / 253 857 / 247 294 / 184 926 / 264 057.

Exercise 5

Say what the date today is:

1 5 November 1996
2 27 June 1994
3 31 December 1973
4 12 May 1845
5 23 October 1873

Dialogue 2

Oprostite še enkrat...

Excuse me once again ...

Jane has been sitting on the train for another hour. She is thinking about Robert waiting for her and is getting rather impatient. She once more addresses the man sitting in her carriage.

JANE: Oprostite še enkrat, gospod, koliko je ura?
(SO)POTNIK: Ura je tri in petindvajset minut.
JANE: Moja ura je že štiri.
(Mogoče prichiteva?)
(SO)POTNIK: Mogoče moja ura zaostaja. Samo trenutek...
(Oprostite, gospa, koliko je ura?)
POTNIKA: Moja ura je točno štiri.

JANE: Excuse me once more, sir, what is the time?
(CO)PASSENGER: It is 3:25.
JANE: My watch says four already.
(Maybe it is fast.)
(CO)PASSENGER: Maybe my watch is slow. Just a minute ...
(he asks a woman who is just passing by.)
Excuse me, madam, what time is it?
PASSENGER: My watch says exactly four o'clock.
Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>je enkrat</td>
<td>once more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ura</td>
<td>time, watch, clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sedaj</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prehiteva</td>
<td>is fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zaostaja</td>
<td>is slow, literally 'late'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>točno</td>
<td>exactly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

Telling the time

The word ura means 'watch' and 'clock'. It also means 'time' in the expression Koliko je ura? The abstract word for 'time' in Slovene is čas, as you have seen in Imam čas (I have time) or Nimam časa (I don't have time).

In everyday speech the twelve-hour clock is used. In official time, e.g. in timetables, on radio and television, in programme schedules etc. the twenty-four-hour clock is used. For the time being it may be easier for you to use the twenty-four-hour clock. Note that the word 'clock' at the end of the English sentence is not translated into Slovene as in Ura je točno štiri (It is exactly four (o'clock)).

15:10 Ura je petnašt in deset minut.
14:30 Ura je štirimajst in trideset minut.

Fractions and sums

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ena polovica or pol</td>
<td>one half or half</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ena četrtina or četrt</td>
<td>one quarter or quarter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tri četrtnina or tri četrt</td>
<td>three quarters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ena tretjina</td>
<td>one third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ena petina</td>
<td>one fifth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 + 4 = 7</td>
<td>tri plus štiri je sedem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 - 4 = 5</td>
<td>devet minus štiri je pet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 x 4 = 8</td>
<td>dva krat štiri je osem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Possibly

When you want to express a possibility of something (which in English you do with words like 'perhaps, maybe, possibly, probably'), you use the words mogoče or morda in Slovene.

How much, how many, how many times?

The question koliko? has several meanings in Slovene. It can mean:

- koliko? how much?
- Koliko je 5+3? What is 5+3?
- Koliko ljudi je tušaj? How many people are here?
- Koliko je ura? What is the time?

The question kolikokrat? means 'how many times?', 'how often?'. When you want to ask someone how many times a day, a week, a year they do something you need the preposition na (on). For example:

- Kolikokrat na dan? How many times a day?
- teden? How many times a week?
- mesec? How many times a month?
- leto? How many times a year?

As an answer to this question you will get:

- enkrat once
- dvakrat twice
- trikrat three times
- štirikrat four times
- petkrat five times
- velikokrat or velikokrat often

Plural of nouns

The Slovene plural of nouns is not formed as in English by adding 's' to the singular form but rather more irregularly. The nouns of each gender take particular endings when they are used in the plural form. You will see more about this in lesson 9.

Here is the word for 'a man', 'a person': človek. This word has an irregular plural ljudje (men, people).
Exercise 6

Tell a man who stopped you on the street and asked you the time that the time is: 15:50, 16:10, 22:30, 12:15, 18:45.

Exercise 7

Križanka (crossword puzzle)

1 bus
2 train
3 car
4 plane
5 year
6 Saturday
7 watch
8 month

Exercise 8

Koliko je?
1 šestnajst plus triindvajset
2 štiriinindvajset minus osem
3 štiriindvajset plus triindvajset
4 štiriinsedemdeset minus dvanajst
5 osem krat štiri

Dialogue 3

Vidim, da berete angleški časopis

I see you are reading an English newspaper

Robert, the English journalist, goes to the café where he has arranged to meet Jane and sits down at a table on the terrace. A Slovene professor addresses him and they enter into conversation:

Professor: Oprostite, ali ste Angleščina? Vidim, da berete angleški časopis.
Robert: Ja, Angleščina. Ampak moja mama je Slovenska.
Professor: Ah, zato govorite slovensko.
Robert: Ja, malo govorim. Ampak slovenščina je zelo težka.
Professor: Ja, vem. Ali ste v Ljubljani na dopustu?
Robert: Ne, po poklicu sem novinar in pišem reportažo o Sloveniji.
Professor: O, zanimivo.
Robert: In kaj ste vsi po poklicu?
Professor: Jaz sem profesor na univerzi. Učim tuje jezike: angleščino in italijanščino. Moja hčerka je prevajalka. Če potrjujete pomoč ... moja telefonska številka je 061 354 768.
Robert: Najlepša hvala.

Professor: Excuse me, are you English?
Robert: Yes, I'm English. But my mother is Slovene.
Professor: Ah, that is why you speak Slovene.
Robert: Yes, I speak a little, but Slovene is very difficult.
Professor: Yes, I know.

Are you on holiday in Slovenia?

Robert: No, I am a journalist and I am writing a report on Slovenia.

Professor: Oh, interesting.

Robert: And what do you do for a living?

Professor: I am a lecturer at a University. I teach foreign languages: English and Italian. My daughter is an interpreter. If you need any help ... my telephone number is 061 354 768.

Robert: Thank you very much.
Vocabulary

videti to see
da that
govoriti to speak
na dopustu on holiday
biti po poklicu to have an occupation (literally 'to be in an occupation')
reportaža report

Language points

Slovene verbs

Most of the Slovene infinitives end in ti and some in č. It is important to memorize the infinitive (you will see later on that some verbs are always followed by an infinitive). Some verbs have a regular present stem (they drop the ti ending and the corresponding ending of a person is added). However, this is not always the case. The present stem sometimes differs beyond recognition from the infinitive. In lessons and in the glossary at the end of the book, you will be given the first person singular form and from there you will be able to add the appropriate endings. Here are three basic patterns of verbs in the present stem:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern</th>
<th>delati</th>
<th>pisati</th>
<th>govoriti</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person singular</td>
<td>jaz</td>
<td>delam</td>
<td>pišem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person singular</td>
<td>ti</td>
<td>delaš</td>
<td>pišeš</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person singular</td>
<td>ona</td>
<td>dela</td>
<td>piše</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person plural</td>
<td>ono</td>
<td>delo</td>
<td>pišo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It will be helpful if you memorize the endings:
1. m to m
2. ĝ to ĝ
3. no ending, only stem to jo

The verb iti 'to go' is irregular and is conjugated like this:
1. grem to grem
2. grešt to grešt
3. gre to grejo

The verb priti 'to come' is irregular in the same way and it is conjugated like this:
1. pridem to pridemo
2. pridešt to pridešteto
3. pride to pridejo

Note that delati can mean 'to work' or 'to do'. For example:
Kaj delati danes popoldne? What are you doing this afternoon?
Nič ne delam. Inam čas. I am doing nothing. I am free.
Kje delate? Where do you work?
Trenutno ne delam. I am not working at the moment.

The verb vedeti 'to know' is also slightly irregular. It is conjugated as follows:
1. vemo to vemo
2. veste to veste
3. vedo to vedo

The Slovene present tense covers the English present simple and present continuous tense, i.e. there is no present continuous tense in Slovene. For example, govorim can mean 'I speak' or 'I am speaking'. If you are using the present continuous tense in English you must not translate the auxiliary words of this tense into Slovene; not only does this sound wrong in Slovene but it really does not make sense.

To make a verb negative you simply put ne in front of it. For example:
(Mi) Ne delamo. We don't work.
(Jaz) Ne vem. I don't know.
(Oni) Ne pišojo. They don't write.
As you have already learned with 'to be' and 'to have', you put the question word ali in front of the verb to make a question. This goes for all Slovene verbs. For example:

Ali dcliaš danes ves dan? Are you working all day today?
Ali gres letos na dopust? Are you going on holiday this year?

Note: There is a phrase iti na dopust meaning 'to go on holiday'.

Personal pronouns

Since every verb has its ending which clearly indicates the person, the personal pronouns in Slovene are usually omitted. Note the sentences in the dialogue:

Ali ste Anglez? Are you English?
Vidim, da berete... I see you are reading...

However, you use the personal pronouns when you want to stress them, as in sentences:

In kaj ste vi po poklicu? And what do you do for a living?

Robert could have asked the professor:
Ali ste tudi vi Anglez? Are you also English?

Da (that)

Da (that) is probably the most frequently used conjunction in Slovene. It introduces a subordinate clause and every subordinate clause in Slovene is always preceded by a comma. Note how the professor says to Robert: Vidim, da berete angleški časopis...

Speaking a language

In lesson 2 you learnt that jezik means language and that you say, for example, slovenski jezik. Angleški and slovenski are both adjectives; they derive from the countries Anglija and Slovenija. Many Slovene adjectives end in -ski or -ski; most countries and towns form their adjectives with these suffixes. When you want to say that you speak a language you say:

Govorim slovensko I speak Slovene
angleško English
nemško German
italijansko Italian
špansko Spanish
frančesko French
rusko Russian

The language one speaks is not spelt with a capital letter in Slovene.

Occupations

You will have noticed in lesson 2 that there is a different form for a male and for a female inhabitant of a country. The same applies to occupations. The original noun is in the male form and the female form usually takes the endings ka, inja or, most commonly, ica. Here are a few examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Male</th>
<th>Female</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>novinar</td>
<td>novinarka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>študent</td>
<td>študentka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prevajalec</td>
<td>prevajalka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frizer</td>
<td>frizerka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>igralec</td>
<td>igralka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prodajalec</td>
<td>prodajalka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>učitelj</td>
<td>učiteljica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>natakar</td>
<td>natakarica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zdravnik</td>
<td>zdravnica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profesor</td>
<td>profesorica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tajnik</td>
<td>tajnica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pisatelj</td>
<td>pisateljica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>journalst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>interpreter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>harber/hairdresser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actor/actress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shop assistant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>housewife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>waiter/waitress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lecturer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>doctor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The word poklic means 'profession'. You use the phrase biti po poklicu when you ask someone what their profession is, what they do for a living, or when you want to tell them about yourself. For example:

Kaj si po poklicu? What is your profession?
Jaz sem po poklicu zdravnik. I'm a doctor.
Kaj ste po poklicu? What do you do for a living?
**Exercise 9**

You are in Slovenia on a train. A man comes into your carriage and starts to talk to you. Answer his questions:

A MAN: Dober dan.
YOU: 1. Return his greeting.
A MAN: Ali je tukaj prosto?
YOU: 2. Say that it is.
A MAN: Ali ste Slovenec?
YOU: 3. Say no, you're English.
A MAN: Ali razumete slovensko?
YOU: 4. Tell him that you understand a little. Ask him if he understands English.
A MAN: Ja, malo razumem. Ampak to ni moj casopis. Moja žena je prevajalka in bere angleske casopise.
YOU: 5. Say how interesting. Ask if she has a lot of work?
A MAN: Vcasih ja, včasih ne. Trenutno je zelo zaposlena.
YOU: 6. Say that if she needs some help... your telephone number in Slovenia is 061 376 824.

**Exercise 10**

You are at a party talking to Miran about what you do. Fill in your part of the conversation:

Miran: Kaj ste po pokliču?
You: 1. Say that you are a student.
Miran: Kaj študirate?
You: 2. Say that you are studying the Slovene language.
Miran: Oh, zanimivo. Moja hčerka je tudi studentka.
You: 3. Ask what she studies?
Miran: Ona študira angleščino.
You: 4. Ask where she studies?
Miran: V Ljubljani. In kje vi študirate?

**Exercise 11**

Choose the correct alternative in italics for the people below:

1. Greta Garbo je igralka/cigrlka.
2. Moj prijatelj je novinar/novinarka.
3. Njegova prijateljica je pisatelj/pisateljka.
5. Jaz sem student/studentka.

**Exercise 12**

(a) Tell your friend that your father is not a teacher / a professor / a doctor / a journalist / a student.
(b) Ask your friend if his mother is a student / an interpreter / a journalist / a housewife / a secretary.

**Exercise 13**

You are at a party and have just met a man who introduced himself to you with the following words:


Introduce the people below to Patrice by making up similar sentences:

1. John/English
2. Pauline/American
3. Maria/Spanish
4. Laura/Italian
5. Angela/English
6. Darja/Slovene

**Exercise 14**

Unscramble the following groups of letters and form words and expressions:

lefonteska vilšteka  
sočapis  
likoko ej rua  
retunke asom ropims  
lipokcju op ems tudsent  
iv lia est lomSence
**Exercise 15**

**Pronunciation exercise.** You have a job in Slovenia and you have to get in touch with these people. Read them out.

Janez Vogrin  
Darko in Sandra Pokeržnik  
Irena Maček  
Matja Fras  
Majda Čegovnik  
Danijela Zupančič  
Sonja in Ivan Kobal

**Dialogue for comprehension**

Jane has finally got to the café where Robert is waiting for her. She is very late but this doesn’t matter to Robert since he is very pleased to see her anyway. Find out how long Robert has been in Slovenia and how he is coping with the Slovene language!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dobro izgledaš</th>
<th>you look well</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nič za to</td>
<td>it doesn’t matter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nikoli več</td>
<td>never again</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Robert: Jan, živio, kako si? Dobro izgledaš.  
Jane: Oprosti, pozna sem. Ura je že šest.  
Robert: Nič za to. Ali si utrjena?  
Jane: Ja, zelo. Nikoli več ne pridez z vlakom. Ali že dolgo čakaš?  
Robert: Ja, od treh. Ampak ni mi dolg čas. Tukaj poznam že nekaj ljudi.  
Jane: Ali velikokrat prideš sem?  
Robert: Ja, dva, trikrat na teden. Po navadi popoldne. Včasih imam tukaj kosilo. Ali si lačna?  
Jane: Ne, samo žejna sem. In zaspana. Že tri mesese si tukaj. Ali govoriš že dobro slovensko?  
Jane: Vedno pišes, da imaš veliko dela.  
Robert: Ja, zmeraj sem zelo zaposlen. Ampak danes zvečer sem prost!

**Dialogue 1**

**Kam greš?**

**Where are you going?**

Matej was going to call at Robert’s place. On the way there he met Robert in front of his hotel, dashing somewhere, looking rather worried.

**Matej:** O, živio Robert. Kam greš?  
**Robert:** V knjigarno. Moram si kupiti slovenski slovar in eno knjigo.  
**Matej:** Ali se učiš slovensko?  
**Robert:** Ja, hodim na tečaj. Ne smeje se!  
**Matej:** Ali prideš v soboto zvečer na zabavo?  
**Robert:** Ne vem še. Ne morem se odločiti.
In the dialogue Matej asks Robert Zakaj ne? (Why not?). This phrase is also usually followed by zato ker (because) plus the explanation.

**To be in a good/bad mood**

To say that you are in a good or in a bad mood you need the expression biti dobre volje (to be in a good mood) or biti slabe volje (to be in a bad mood). You conjugate the verb 'to be' to say this for the person you want. For example:

- Robert ni dobre volje. Robert is not in a good mood.
- Ali je Matej dobre volje? Is Matej in a good mood?
- Jaz sem danes slabe volje. I am in a bad mood today.
- Ali si ti vedno slabe volje? Are you always in a bad mood?

**Hoditi**

The verb hoditi means 'to go' or 'to walk'. When you regularly go somewhere it means 'to attend'. Notice how Robert explains: Hodim na tečaj.

**The uses of the present tense**

As in English the present tense can be used with future meaning. Note how Matej asks Robert: Ali prideš v soboto zvečer na zabavo? Sentences like this one are expressed with the present continuous tense in English and since there is no present continuous tense in Slovene you use the simple present tense. Neither is there a present perfect tense in Slovene, and sentences like 'I've already been living here for a year' are expressed with the present simple tense, e.g. Tukaj živim že eno leto ('I have already been living here for a year', literally I am living...').

**Reflexive verbs**

Very many Slovene verbs are reflexive. You recognize them by the reflexive pronouns se or sometimes si. They are conjugated like all other verbs but are preceded or followed by se or si. For example:
In the negative form ne is placed between se or si and the verb, and when the question is formed ali is followed first by se or si and then the verb. For example:

Jaz se veselim.
Ali se ti veselis?
I am looking forward to it.
Are you looking forward to it?

Sometimes a verb which is reflexive can have an entirely different meaning from the one it has when it is not reflexive. The verb učiti means 'to teach', but the reflexive učiti se means 'to learn', 'to study'.

The verb igrači means 'to play' and must always be followed by an object. For example: Barbara igra klavirot (Barbara is playing the piano). When it is reflexive it means 'to play', as in Boris se igra (Boris is playing).

Questions you may want to ask people about themselves or answer in order to introduce yourself

The verb pisati means 'to write' but when you're asking or giving someone's surname you say pisati se:

Kako se pišete? (polite form)
Kako se pišes? (familiar form)

The expression means 'What is your surname?' Its literal meaning is 'What do you write yourself as?' The answer is:

Pišem se (your surname)

When you're saying what someone is called you use imenovati se.

Kako se imenujete? (polite form)

Kako se imenujes? (familiar form)

The answer is:

Imenujem se ... (your name and surname)

A more commonly used question to ask someone's name is:

Kako vam je ime? (polite form)
Kako ti je ime? (familiar form)

The expression means 'What is your name?' The answer is:

Ime mi je ... (your name)

The question

Koliko ste star? (polite form)
Koliko si star? (familiar form)

means 'How old are you?' The answer is:

Star (stara) sem ... 12, 24, 35 let.

The question 'Where do you live?' is:

Kje stanujete? (polite form)
Kje stanujs? (familiar form)

Address

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>naslov</th>
<th>address, title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ulica</td>
<td>street</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cesta</td>
<td>road</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The word naslov means 'address' and 'title', as in 'the title of the book'. Note that Slovenes write the number of the street after the name of the street, as in Slovenska cesta 43. The abbreviation for ulica is ul., for example Ljubljanska ul. 6.

The expression of ability and inability: 'can' and 'cannot'

In Slovene you express ability with the adverb lahko, which never changes. With it you need the verb in the form of the person you are referring to, for example:
Jaz ti lahko pomagam.  
Ali lahko grem pes?  
Kje lahko kupim slovenski slovar?

I can help you.  
Can I go on foot?  
Where can I buy a dictionary?

**Lahko** is used only in the positive form. When you want to express inability you use the verb moči. In the dialogue Robert says 
Ne morem se odločiti (I cannot decide). Moči is irregular and is always followed by an infinitive. These are the forms of moči in the negative:

| jaz ne morem | mi ne moremo  |
| ti ne moreš | vi ne morete  |
| ona ne more  | oni ne morejo |

Some examples:

Mi se ne moremo odločiti.  
Jaz ne morem priti danes zvečer.  
Ona ne more ti v Slovenijo.  

We cannot decide.  
I cannot come tonight.  
She cannot go to Slovenia.

Infinitives are those parts of a verb which do not indicate a person. In English they are preceded by 'to', e.g. 'to work, to write', and in Slovene they usually end in ti, e.g. delati, pisati. As in English, there are verbs in Slovene which are always followed by an infinitive:

*hoteti (hočem)*
*smeti (smem)*
*začeti (začnem)*
*želiti (želim)*
*nameravati (nameravam)*
*morati (moram)*

**Note:** You have learned that the verbs *hití* and *imeti* form their negative as one word, as in *Danes nisem doma* or *Nimamo sreče.* The verb *hoteti* also forms its negative as one word. Here are the forms of *hoteti* in the negative:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 nočem</th>
<th>2 nočes</th>
<th>3 noče</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nočemo</td>
<td>nočete</td>
<td>nočeo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All the other Slovene verbs form their negative by putting ne in front of them.

---

**Exercise 1**

Change these sentences so that they become negative statements and keep in mind that negative words require a negative verb.

1. Robert se zmeraj uči slovensko.  
2. Danes smo vsi doma.  
3. Jaz se vedno počutim dobro.  
4. Moj prijatelj se zmeraj smeji.  
5. Sabina vedno vse ve.

**Exercise 2**

You are in a bookshop wanting to buy a dictionary but they don't have it at the moment. The shop-assistant tells you that it is on order and that they will receive it soon. He is willing to contact you as soon as it arrives. He asks for the following information. Can you fill in your part of the dialogue?

**TRGOVEC:** Kako vam je ime?

**YOU:** 1. *(Tell him)*

**TRGOVEC:** In kako si pisate?

**YOU:** 2. *(Tell him)*

**TRGOVEC:** Kje stanujete?

**YOU:** 3. *(Say in Ljubljana, this is my address)*

**TRGOVEC:** Ali imate telefon?

**YOU:** 4. Yes, my telephone number is 061 375 354.

**TRGOVEC:** Ali ste prvič v Sloveniji?

**YOU:** 5. No, for the third time.

**TRGOVEC:** Ali ste na dopustu?

**YOU:** 6. No, I work here.

**TRGOVEC:** In učite se slovensko?

**YOU:** 7. Yes, it always helps if you speak the language.

**TRGOVEC:** Ja, seveda.

**Exercise 3**

Write down the opposite meaning of the adjectives listed here together with the nouns.

1. *dobro volje*  
2. *nov slovar*  
3. *težek jezik*  
4. *velika knjigarna*  
5. *pobo mesto*
Exercise 4

Ask questions as suggested which will give you the following sentences as an answer:

1 Robert ima trikrat na teden slovenski tečaj.
   Ask: How many times a week has Robert got his Slovene course?
2 Jane je njegova punca.
   Ask: Who is Jane?
3 Ura je točno pet.
   Ask: What time is it?
4 To je moja knjiga.
   Ask: Whose book is this?
5 Knigarna je v centru.
   Ask: Excuse me, where is the bookshop?

Exercise 5

Križanka

(a) Robert remembers that he still has to go somewhere after he's been to the bookshop. Fill in the Slovene words across and you will see where he has to go:

1 five
2 town
3 house
4 car
5 dictionary

(b) He has to post a letter. Fill in the words down and you will get the Slovene word for a letter across

1 Mr
2 male teacher
3 eight
4 help
5 please

Dialogue 2

Oprostite, kje je posta?

Excuse me, where is the post office?

Robert has got lost on his way to the bookshop which has been recommended to him. He asks a pedestrian if he could help him.

Robert: Oprostite, ali mi lahko poveste, kje je ta knjigarna?
Mladinska Knjiga
Slovenska Cesta 29
61 000 Ljubljana

Passer-by: Unfortunately I don't know. There at the corner is a policeman. He certainly knows.

Robert: Excuse me, do you know where this bookshop is?
Mladinska Knjiga
Slovenska Cesta 29
61 000 Ljubljana

Passer-by: Oh, it isn't close by. But here in front of the hotel is a bus stop. The number 3 bus goes there. It is here already! Hurry!

Robert: Thank you.

Robert found the bookshop and bought his dictionary and now he has to buy a stamp for the letter he has to post. He asks where the post office is.

Robert: Oprostite, kje je posta?
Pešec: Tukaj za vogalom je poštni nabiralnik.
Robert: Moram iti na pošto. Kupiti moram znamko.
Pešec: Ali vidite tisti semafor in prehod za pešce? Tam zavijite na levo in pojdiš približno sto metrov na ravnost pa ste tam.
Robert: Ali grem lahko pes?
Pešec: Ja, seveda.
Robert: Excuse me, where is the post office?
Passer-by: Around the corner is a letter-box.
Robert: I must go to the post office. I must buy a stamp.
Passer-by: Do you see the traffic lights and the zebra crossing? Turn left there and go approximately 100 metres straight on and you're there.
Robert: Can I walk?
Passer-by: Yes, of course.

Vocabulary

vogal - corner
stoj (stojim) - to stand
policist - policeman
sigurno - certainly, definitely
close by
blizu - close by
politeti (PLITIM) - to hurry
post office
postni nahirnik - letter-box
znamka - stamp
semafor - traffic light
prehod za pešce - zebra crossing
zaviti (zavijem) - to turn
približno - approximately

Language points

Asking for and giving directions

When you are lost or when you are looking for something, you need to ask for directions. You approach somebody with one of the following phrases:

Oprostite, kje je ...?
Oprostite, ali mi lahko poveste ...
Oprostite, ali veste ...
The person's reply will probably be:

na levo - on the left
na desno - on the right
na ravnost - straight on
na vogalu - at the corner
na vogalom - behind
na Vogalom - round the corner

You will also need the prepositions:

in front of
behind
at the corner

and adverbs

blizu - close by
daleč - far away

Note: When you are given a distance it will be in metres and kilometres.

Indirect questions

Unlike in English, there is no reversal in the word order in Slovene when you ask an indirect question. For example:

Kje je pošta?
Ali veste, kje je pošta?
Ali mi lahko poveste, kje je avtobusna postaja.

Do you know where the post office is?
Can you tell me where the bus stop is?

To go on foot

'To go somewhere on foot' is expressed in Slovene with the verb iditi and the adverb pes. For example:

Robert gre pes v knjigarno. Robert walks to the bookshop.
Jaz ne grem nikoli nikamor pes. I never walk anywhere.
Mi gremo pes v mesto. We walk to town.

Ta/tisti

The Slovene language has no article. However, when you want to stress something you can use the demonstrative pronouns to express this. Notice how Robert asks Kje je ta knjigarna?, meaning 'Where is this particular bookshop?' as opposed to any bookshop. Another example is in dialogue 2, where the policeman says Ali vidite tisti semafor? (Do you see that traffic light?), referring to a particular traffic light.
Smile! Be happy!

The verb *smejati se* means 'to laugh (at)' or 'to smile' and is conjugated like this:

1. *jaz se smejim*  
2. *ti se smejis*  
3. *oni se smejijo*

**The imperative**

You will have noticed that Matej says to Robert in the dialogue: *Ne smej se!* In this sentence *smej* is the imperative form of the verb *smejati se*.

The imperative is a verbal form which is used when we command, ask someone to do something, or advise. In Slovene the imperative is formed from the present tense of the verb in the following way:

1. **Verbs of the -a conjugation (delati)**
   - You drop the *m* from the first person singular and add:
     - for the familiar form, *j*  
     - for the plural or polite form, *jte*  
     - for 'we' as in 'Let us...', *jmo*  
   - delaj!  
   - delajte!  
   - delajmo!

2. **Verbs of the -e conjugation (pisati)**
   - You drop the *em* ending from the first person singular and add:
     - for the familiar form, *i*  
     - for the plural and polite form, *ite*  
     - for the 'we' form, *imo*  
   - pisi!  
   - pisite!  
   - pisimo!

3. **Verbs of the -i conjugation (govoriti)**
   - You drop the *m* from the first person singular and add:
     - for the familiar form, nothing  
     - for the plural and polite form, *ite*  
     - for the 'we' form, *imo*  
   - govori!  
   - govorite!  
   - govorimo!

Note how the policeman said to Robert *Pohitite!* The verb *pohiteti* falls into the third group above. You drop the *m* from *pohitini* and add *te* in order to get *pohitite.* He addressed Robert in the polite form. Had he addressed him in a familiar form he would have said *pohiti!*

The pedestrian said to Robert *Pojdite...* This is the imperative form of *iti*, which, together with a few other commonly used verbs, is irregular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Familiar form</th>
<th>Polite form</th>
<th>'We' form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>biti</td>
<td>bodi</td>
<td>bodite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iti</td>
<td>pojdi</td>
<td>pojdite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meti</td>
<td>imej</td>
<td>imejte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pogledati</td>
<td>poglej</td>
<td>poglejte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vedeti</td>
<td>vedite</td>
<td>vedimo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smejati se</td>
<td>smej se</td>
<td>smejte se</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: What is called the 'we' form is translated into English with 'Let's...'.

In the first dialogue in this lesson you will have noticed Robert saying to Matej *Ne smej se!* To make any of the commands negative you put *ne* in front of the imperative.

Here are few commonly used expressions in the imperative form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Familiar</th>
<th>Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oprostite!</td>
<td>Oprostite!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pohitite!</td>
<td>Pohitite!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pridite sem!</td>
<td>Pridite sem!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Počakajte!</td>
<td>Počakajte!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pazi se!</td>
<td>Pazi se!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ne skrbite!</td>
<td>Ne skrbite!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vozite prevzimo!</td>
<td>Vozite prevzimo!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodi tiho!</td>
<td>Bodi tiho!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ne jezi se!</td>
<td>Ne jezi se!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verjemi mi!</td>
<td>Verjemi mi!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 6**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>letos</th>
<th>this year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>v kino</td>
<td>to the cinema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zgodaj</td>
<td>early</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(a) Ask your friend if he:
1. intends to go away for a holiday this year.
2. wants to come to the cinema this evening.
3. must start work early tomorrow morning.
(b) Tell him that you:
1. can help him.
2. cannot decide at the moment.
3. cannot go to the party on Friday evening.

Exercise 7

(a) Answer the questions you've been asked as suggested:
1. **Zakaj se smejš?**
   **SAY:** Because I'm in a good mood.
2. **Zakaj si moraš kupiti slovenski slovar?**
   **SAY:** Because I'm learning Slovene.
3. **Zakaj si vsak dan pozen?**
   **SAY:** Because my bus is late every day.

(b) Ask questions as suggested so that you will get the following answers:
1. **ASK:** Why are you in a bad mood?
   **Zato, ker imam zelo veliko dela.**
2. **ASK:** Why are you going to the post office?
   **Zato, ker moram poslati připoručeno pismo.**
3. **ASK:** Why are you going on foot?
   **Zato, ker ni daleč.**

Exercise 8

Ask questions so that you get these answers:
1. Ne, tukaj ne smeš kaditi.
2. Ne, hvala. Danes ne morem iši v kino.
3. Ne, žal mi je. Danes zvečer ne morem priti.
4. Ne, v kiosku ne moreš kupiti slovarja.
5. Ne, ne morete iši pes.

Exercise 9

1. Your friend is telling you about something terrible that has happened to him. Say to him: Don't worry!
2. You're going out and your friend is not ready yet. Say to him: Hurry up!
3. You're on a crowded bus and you step on someone's foot. Say to them: I'm sorry!
4. You're on a trip with your friend and you have just seen something you'd like her to see too. Shout out to her: Come here!
5. You're telling her how you saw a similar thing somewhere else but she is looking at you rather suspiciously. Say to her: Believe me!
6. She is fed up listening to you and is walking away. Ask her to wait!

Exercise 10

You are on a trip abroad and lose your way frequently. How would you ask a stranger on the street:
1. Excuse me, where is the hotel Slon?
2. Excuse me, can you tell me where the post office is?
3. Is there a bus stop close by?
4. Is the bus usually on time?
5. Do you know what time it is?

Dialogue 3

**Izvolite!**

**Here you are!**

**Robert has got to the post office and is being served**

**PRODAJALEC:** Prosim?

**ROBERT:** Eno znanko za pismo, prosim.

**PRODAJALEC:** Za Slovenijo ali za tujino?

**ROBERT:** Za tujino. In te tri razglednice, prosim.

**PRODAJALEC:** Izvolite!

**ROBERT:** Hvala.
Robert has done what he had planned to do and thinks to himself:

*In sedaj grem lahko domov.*

**Assistant:** How may I help you?

**Robert:** A stamp for a letter, please.

**Assistant:** For Slovenia or for abroad?

**Robert:** For abroad. And these three postcards, please.

**Assistant:** Here you are.

Robert has done what he had planned to do and thinks to himself:

*And now I can go home.*

**Vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>znamka</th>
<th>stamp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pismo</td>
<td>letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>razglednica</td>
<td>postcard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Language points**

**About the post office**

If you want to send an air-mail letter you will have to ask for *letalsko pismo*. To send something by registered post you need to send it *priporočeno*. You can put ordinary letters (*navadna pisma*) and postcards (*razglednica*) into a letter-box *posigni nabiralnik*. The postman (*poštar*) will bring the post to your home. Should you need a telephone number you look it up in a telephone directory (*telefonski izzid*). You can telephone from the post office at a much cheaper rate than from a hotel or from a telephone box (*telefonska govorilnica*). You can buy postcards, stamps, newspapers, cigarettes and other small items at a *kiosk*.

**Please**

**Prosimit** means ‘please’. You use this word where you would in English, but also in some additional ways.

1. When someone thanks you, reply **Prosimit** or *Ni za kaj* which corresponds to ‘Not at all’ in English.

2. When you first answer the telephone, as you have seen in lesson 2, you say **Prosimit** which corresponds to ‘Hello’ in English.

3. When you haven’t heard what someone has said and you’d like them to repeat it, you say **Prosimit**? which corresponds to ‘I beg your pardon?’ or ‘Sorry?’ in English.

4. In shops or at any similar place when someone is about to serve you they will probably say **Prosimit** when they first address you, corresponding to ‘How may I help you?’ in English.

**Here you are**

A shop assistant, a waiter or whoever might give you something will probably say Izvolite when addressing you in a polite form or *Izvoli* when addressing you in a familiar form. The word means ‘Here you are’.

**To go home**

In lesson 2 you learnt about the adverb *doma* which means ‘at home’. The adverb *domov* means ‘(to) home’ and like *doma* never changes. Note how Robert thinks to himself: *Sedaj grem lahko domov.*

The noun *dom* means ‘one’s home’. In other words, Slovene has three words for the English word ‘home’. Look at the following examples showing how they are used:

**To je moj dom.** This is my home.

**Ali greš domov?** Are you going home? (i.e. ‘to your home’)

**Zal mi je, danes nisem doma.** I’m sorry, I’m not at home today.

**Exercise 11**

| trgovina | shop |

Explain to the person who has asked you for directions that:

1. The hotel is not far away. You can go on foot.
2. The shop is close by. Here, behind the hotel.
3. The bus stop is not very far away. One hundred metres straight on.
4. You are sorry but you don’t know where the postbox is.
5. They can buy stamps in a kiosk.
Exercise 12
Re-arrange the words of the dialogue below so that they will make sense. Clue: start with the word which has a capital letter.

Oprostite, ali mi lahko poveste, kje je poštni nabiralnik?
Moj prijatelj Robert pride v četrtek.

Dialogue for comprehension

On his way back home Robert has been stopped by someone who is lost and Robert helps him. What nationality does the man turn out to be and what does he do in Slovenia?

Exercise 14

Which word among the five in each of the following lines would be odd in this particular group and why?

1. novinar, frizer, četrtek, pisatelj, učitelj
2. Angleščina, Slovenka, Američan, Italijanka, Nemka
3. govorim, delam, prideš, grem, vidim
4. ponедeljek, преваждеч, sreda, неделja, torek
5. lep, star, nov, grad, velika

Exercise 15

Pronunciation exercise. Notice that the Slovene r is always pronounced as a consonant and is never absent or semi-pronounced as it often is in English. It is pronounced strongly, slightly rolled.

Grem v trgovino.
Ne govorim rusko.
V torek in v sredo zvečer sem doma.
In this lesson you will learn about:
- How to use the Slovene dual form
- The Slovene words for 'here' and 'there'
- Words and expressions about the bank
- The accusative case
- The expressions 'to like something' and 'to like to do something'
- Some words for colours

5 Nič ne skrbi!
Don't worry!

Dialogue 1

Greva na kavo!
Let's go for a coffee!

Ann and Nick Moore, friends of a Slovene couple, Tomaz and Barbara Rataj, have gone to Slovenia to visit them. It is their first day and they have a lot to do. In spite of that, Ann suggests that they should have a cup of coffee somewhere.

Ann: Nick, greva na kavo!
Nick: Nimava časa, pozna sva. Morava iti še na banko in zamenjati denar.
Nick: Ne, nimam. Imam pa vozniško dovoljenje in osebno izkaznico.
Ann: Ne vem, če so to tukaj uradni dokumenti. Ampak nič ne skrbi! Jaz imam potni list! Popijva tukaj eno kavo.

Nick: Ali pride natakarica sem, ali greva midva tja?
Natakarica: Sem že tukaj!
Ann: Nick, let's go for a coffee.
Nick: We haven't got time. We're late. We still have to go to the bank and change some money.
Ann: We aren't late. The bank is open from eight to six. It is only five o'clock now. Do you have your passport on you?
Nick: No, I haven't. But I have my driving licence and my ID.
Ann: I don't know if these are official documents here. But don't worry! I have my passport. Let's have a coffee here.
Nick: Does the waitress come here or do we go there?
Waitress: I'm already here!

Vocabulary

kava  coffee
banka  bank
zamenjati  to change
denar  money
potni list  passport
vozniško dovoljenje  driving licence
osebna izkaznica  identity card (ID)
uradni dokumenti  official documents

Language points

Dual form

In this dialogue you will have noticed the verb forms greva, nimava, sva, morava, nisva, popijva. These are all dual forms of the verbs.

The dual form is an ancient Slavic form which has been lost in most languages but is still in use in Slovene. All Slovene nouns, verbs and pronouns have, in addition to singular and plural, the dual form, which is used when one talks about two things or two people. This increases the number of Slovene grammatical forms enormously. For example:

Ti in jaz sva v Sloveniji.  You and I are in Slovenia.
Midva sva v Sloveniji.  We are in Slovenia.

In English you say 'we' when you mean two people but in Slovene you say midva (we two). You use the plural when you talk about
two people or two things in English but you need to use the dual form in Slovene. In other words, Slovene has:

- singular form (one person or one thing);
- dual form (two people or two things);
- plural form (more than two people or things).

You must recognize the dual form because it is used all the time in Slovene.

Generally you can get by by using the plural when you mean two people or two things. Sometimes when referring to two people you cannot avoid using the dual form. For example:

- **Midva** (i.e. 'we two') *sva* — We are married.
- **Onadva** (i.e. 'they two') *sta* — Marko and Denis are twins.

In addition to this there is a feminine dual form (when talking of two females) and feminine plural form (when talking of more than two females):

- **Onidve** (i.e. 'they two') *sta doma* — Marta and Sabina are at home.

Let's conjugate the verbs 'to be', 'to have' and 'to go' in dual form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>First Person Singular</th>
<th>Second Person Singular</th>
<th>Third Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Midva</td>
<td>biti</td>
<td>imeti</td>
<td>iti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midva (we two)</td>
<td>sva</td>
<td>imava</td>
<td>grava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vidva (you two)</td>
<td>sta</td>
<td>imata</td>
<td>gresta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onadva (they two)</td>
<td>sta</td>
<td>imata</td>
<td>gresta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The endings of the verbs in dual form are:

- midva -va
- vidva -ta
- onadva -ta

The possessive pronouns in the dual form are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nadin</td>
<td>najina</td>
<td>najino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vajin</td>
<td>vajina</td>
<td>vajino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>njun</td>
<td>njuna</td>
<td>njuno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yours and mine, our(s) (two)</td>
<td>yours and his or hers, your(s) (two)</td>
<td>his and hers, their(s) (two)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sin</th>
<th>son</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hčerka</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rudi je nadin sin. — Rudi is our son.
Martina je njuna hčerka. — Martina is their (two) daughter.
Ali je to vajin avto? Is this your (two) car?

**Here/there**

There are two words in Slovene for each of the English words, 'here' and 'there'. Look at these sentences:

- **Jaz sem takaj**. I am here.
- **Ali prides tudi ti sen?** Are you coming here too?
- **Simona je tam.** Simona is there.
- **Tudi jaz grem tja.** I am going there too.

When something is being placed here or there you use the words *takaj* or *tam*. Whenever there is a movement involved, e.g. whenever someone or something is coming or going here or there, you use the words *sem* or *tja*.

Do not confuse the meaning of *sem* 'here' with the verb 'to be' as in *jaz sem* (I am). You will be able to see the difference from the context.

**Open/closed**

The word *odprt* means 'open' and the word *zaprto* means 'closed'. They come from the verbs *odpreti* (to open), and *zapreti* (to close).

*Vas vjut odprem okna.* I open the window every morning.
*Vedno pozabim zapreti vrata.* I always forget to close the door.

One usually sees these verbs in the imperative form as in:

- **Odpreti okno!** Open the window!
- **Zapreti vrata!** Close the door!

In most official places you will see the sign:

**Odprto do ... do ...** Open from ... until ...
At what time? (At 1, 2, 3 o'clock)

The question ob kateri uri? means 'at what time?'; however, most people will simply use kdaj? meaning 'when?'. When you answer this question you need the following endings, using the twelve-hour clock:

1 enih 5 petih 9 devetih
2 dveh 6 šestih 10 desetih
3 trch 7 sedmih 11 enajstih
4 štiri 8 osmih 12 dvanajstih

These endings are also used with prepositions:

- od from
- do until
- ob at
- okoli around, at about

For example:

V službi sem od devetih do petih. Kosilo imam včasih ob dvanajstih včasih ob enih. Po navadi pridem domov okoli šestih.

I'm at work from nine to five. I have lunch sometimes at twelve and sometimes at one. I usually come home at about six.

When you want to enquire when the first (prvi) or the last (zadnji) train, bus or plane leaves for a town, city or country these places will have the accusative ending, for example:

Ob kateri uri pelje prvi vlak at what time does the first train v (za) Ljubljano? to Ljubljana leave?
Ob kateri uri pelje zadnji At what time does the last bus to avtobus v (za) Maribor? Maribor leave?

You will have noticed the preposition za (for). As in English, you can say 'for', as in 'At what time does the first train for Ljubljana leave?'

About the bank

The word you will need most when having anything to do with a bank is 'money' (denar). You may not have cash (gotovina) but a cheque (ček) or a travellers' cheque (potovnini ček). If you are dealing with cheques you will need a cheque book (čekovana knjižica). At the bank you can deposit money (vložiti denar) or withdraw money (dvigniti denar). You may have a credit card (kreditna kartica) which you use at a cash point (bančni avtomat) and for which you have your personal number (osebna številka).

To do any of this you will need an official document (uradni dokument). In Slovenia an identity form (osebna izkaznica) is usually an official document; foreigners are mostly requested to present their passport (potni list).

You can change your money in banks, in larger hotels, in bureaux de change and in some travel agencies. Travellers' cheques, Eurocheques and major credit cards are accepted in most places.

Here are a few adjectives you may like to use when you want to describe people:

- bogat rich
- pošten honest
- skromen modest

Exercise 1

Insert the words for 'here' and 'there' in these sentences:

1. Moja prijateljica je ... (here).
2. Jaz grem ... tomorrow, (there).
3. Prosim, pridi ... (here).
4. Nihe ni ... (there).
5. Mislim, da so vsi ... (here).

Exercise 2

Change the verbs in bold in this conversation so that the conversation will be in the polite form of address:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stanovati</th>
<th>to live</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Ali govoris slovensko?
Ja, študiram slovenščino. Ali si ti Slovenec?
Kje stanujes?
V Ljubljani v centru. In ti?
Tujo jaz stanujem v centru. Ali imaš telefon?
Ja, moja telefonska številka je 671 468. Kako ti je ime?
Ime mi je Renata. Pišem se javnik. In kako je tebi ime?
Ali imaš telefon?
**Exercise 3**

You are on holiday in Slovenia with a friend. Tell a Slovene person you have met what you two do in England.

1. We work from nine to five.
2. We usually have lunch at 1 o’clock.
3. On Saturdays and on Sundays we are not at work.
4. We come home at about 7 o’clock.
5. We go on holiday every year in August.

**Exercise 4**

Ask at the station when the first train for the following town leaves. The first one has been done for you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mesto</th>
<th>Čas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>London</td>
<td>06.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ljubljana</td>
<td>07.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priz</td>
<td>08.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amsterdam</td>
<td>05.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ženeva</td>
<td>09.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Praga</td>
<td>04.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Prvi vlak v London pelje ob šestih zjutraj.

**Exercise 5**

Suppose you work at the tourist information office. Tell the person who asked you that the last bus to the places in exercise 4 leaves at the times given. The first example has been done for you.

1. Zadnji avtobus v London pelje ob šestih zvečer.

**Dialogue 2**

**Čaj z mlekom?**

*Tea with milk?*

Ann and Nick are sitting in the café and talking about how different people like their tea and coffee.

**Ann:**

Jaz imam zelo rada čaj z mlekom, ampak tukaj pijem čaj z limono. Vsii čudno gledajo, če naročim čaj z mlekom.

**Nick:**

Moj sodelavec ima rad čaj z medom. Baj je zelo dober. Ali vprašam natakarico, če ga imajo?

**Ann:**

Ne, raje bi čaj z limono.

**Nick:**


**Ann:**

Sloveni so navajeni, piti močno kavo. Vsii jo imajo radi.

**Ann:**

I very much like tea with milk but here I drink lemon tea. Everybody looks at me if I order tea with milk.

**Nick:**

A colleague of mine drinks tea with honey. It is supposedly very good. Shall I ask if they have it?

**Ann:**

No, I’d prefer lemon tea.

**Nick:**

I like coffee best. But I think that the coffee in Slovenia is very strong. I drink white coffee here.

**Ann:**

The Slovenes are used to drinking strong coffee. They all like it.

**Vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kavarna</th>
<th>café</th>
<th>med</th>
<th>honey</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>čaj</td>
<td>tea</td>
<td>buje</td>
<td>supposedly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mleko</td>
<td>milk</td>
<td>misli</td>
<td>to think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>limona</td>
<td>lemon</td>
<td>močen</td>
<td>strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>čušno</td>
<td>strangely</td>
<td>biti navajen</td>
<td>to be used to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naročiti</td>
<td>to order</td>
<td>piti</td>
<td>to drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sodelavec</td>
<td>colleague</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The expression *biti navajen ‘to be used to’* is followed by an infinitive in Slovene. Note how Ann says *Sloveni so navajeni, piti močno kavo.*

The verbs *piti* (to drink), *peti* (to sing), *poslati* ‘to send’ fall into a category of verbs with *-je* stem. They are conjugated like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>piti</th>
<th>peti</th>
<th>poslati</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>pijem</td>
<td>pojem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>pijes</td>
<td>pojes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>pije</td>
<td>poje</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>pijemo</td>
<td>pojem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>pijete</td>
<td>pojete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>pijeto</td>
<td>pojetjo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Would you like a drink?

Places where you have a drink are kavarna (café), or bife (buffet), where you usually just stand by the bar. You can have a snack in a café but for a meal you go to restavracija (a restaurant). The English prepositional phrase ‘for’, as in ‘to go for’ a drink, is translated as na. Note how Barbara says to Tomaz Greva na kavo! A waiter will probably say to you Želite prosti?, or just Prost?; both meaning ‘What would you like?’ Here are a few drinks you may like to order:

- malo pivo
- veliko pivo
- kozarec belega vina
- kozarec rdečega vina
- sok

a small beer
a large beer
a glass of white wine
a glass of red wine
juice

To like something

You express ‘to like (something)’ with the verb imeti plus the nominative ending. For example:

Melita ima rada čaj. Melita likes tea.
Janez ima rad kavo. Janez likes coffee.
Slovenci imajo radi močno kavo. Slovenes like strong coffee.

The noun of whatever you like will be in the accusative case because you can ask yourself the question ‘Whom/what do I like?’

The use of the accusative case

In lesson 2 you learnt about the nominative case, which is used for the subject of a sentence or as a predicate nominative in a sentence (e.g. ‘a teacher’ in the sentence ‘Jana is a teacher’). The accusative case is used as a direct object and as the object of some prepositions. Let us first see how it is used as a direct object.

Črno kavo je zelo dobra. Black coffee is very good.

In this sentence ‘black coffee’ is the subject; it governs the verb, i.e. it tells you what is very good.

Jaz imam rad črno kavo. I like black coffee.

In this sentence ‘black coffee’ is the object; it receives the action of the verb, i.e. it tells you what I like.

The object of a sentence is in the accusative case and in Slovene it has a different ending from the subject. The endings are as follows:

First declension

Feminine nouns ending in a change their ending to o. For example:

- Tanja je moja prijatejica. Tanja is my friend.
- Vsak dan vidim mojo prijatejico. I see my friend every day.

Second declension

Feminine nouns ending in a consonant stay the same but the adjective which has the ending a in the nominative changes the ending to o. For example:

- To je velika cerkev. This is a big church.
- Ali vidis tisto veliko cerkev? Do you see that big church?

All adjectives modifying nouns of the first and second declensions have an o ending.

Third declension

Masculine nouns denoting non-living objects and their adjectives stay the same. For example:

- V garazi stoji moj nov avto. My new car is in the garage.
- Kupit si moram nov avto. I must buy myself a new car.

Masculine nouns denoting living objects take the ending a in the accusative case. For example:

- Marko je moj dober prijatelj. Marko is a good friend of mine.
- Imam dobrega prijatelja. I have a good friend.

Note: Adjectives modifying non-living objects do not have any ending in the accusative case; they remain as in the nominative case. Adjectives modifying living objects have the ending ega as in dobrega.
Fourth declension
Neuter nouns stay the same. For example:
London je veliko mesto. London is a big city.
Grem v mesto. I'm going to town.
Most adjectives modifying neuter nouns take an o ending. Very few adjectives take an e ending.

Personal pronouns in the accusative case

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>jaz</th>
<th>mene or me</th>
<th>me</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ti</td>
<td>tebe or te</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>njega or ga</td>
<td>him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ona</td>
<td>njn or jo</td>
<td>her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ono</td>
<td>njega or ga</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dual**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>midva</th>
<th>naju</th>
<th>us two</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vidva</td>
<td>vaju</td>
<td>you two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onadva</td>
<td>nijju or ju</td>
<td>them two</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mi</th>
<th>nas</th>
<th>us</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vi</td>
<td>vas</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nni</td>
<td>nijh or jih</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The long form of the personal pronouns (mene, tebe, etc.) is usually used for emphasis and after prepositions. Short forms are used much more often.
The question you can ask yourself in order to have a noun in the accusative case in an answer is koga? for people or kaj? for things.
The prepositions used with the accusative case are v, na, po, and za.
When you want to translate the pronoun 'it' you must keep in mind that the Slovene nouns distinguish three genders, whereas in English, 'it' is always neuter. Look at the following examples:

**Colours**

To ask what colour something is you say Kakšne harne je ...? As a response you will get the colours:

- bel/-a/-o white
- moder/-a/-o blue
- črn/-a/-o black
- rjavi/-a/-o brown
- rdeč/-a/-e red
- siv/-a/-o grey
- zelene/-a/-o green
- rumene/-a/-o yellow

All colours are adjectives; therefore they take the ending of the noun they modify in a particular case. For example:

- Črna kava je dobra. Black coffee is good.
- Nick ima rad črno kavo ampak Nick likes black coffee but in Sloveniji piše belo kavo. Slovenia he drinks white coffee.

The neuter form of the adjectives has an e ending at times rather than the usual a ending. This occurs when the masculine which is the stem form of the adjective ends in the following consonants: c, č, j, š, ž. This applies to all adjectives.

**Exercise 6**

Choose the correct answer:

1. Kaj ima rada Ann?
   - (a) Čaj z limono.
   - (b) Čaj z mlekom.
   - (c) Čaj z medom.

2. Kaj ima najraja Nick?
   - (a) Belo kavo.
   - (b) Črno kavo.
   - (c) Močno kavo.
Exercise 7

Fill in the suggested personal pronouns in the accusative case:
1 Ali ... pogosto vidiš? *(them two)*
2 Ne poznajo ... *(us)*
3 On ... ima rad. *(her)*
4 Ona ... ima rada. *(him)*
5 Vidim ... vsak dan. *(them)*

Exercise 8

Say that:
1 This book is dark blue.
2 Her dictionary is red.
3 This hotel is grey.
4 His new car is light brown.
5 My old driving licence is purple.

Exercise 9

Križanka

1 milk
2 tea
3 coffee
4 Wednesday
5 money
6 lemon
7 bank
8 café

Exercise 10

How would you write yourself these notes in your diary:

1 I must go to the bank on Wednesday and change some money.
2 I am going to Italy in August.
3 I have a meeting in Ljubljana on Thursday.
4 I must ask at what time the last train to Milan leaves.
5 My secretary is in Germany in December.

Dialogue 3

Ali igraš tenis?

Do you play tennis?

After having had their coffee Nick and Ann talk about what they will do during their stay.

Ann: *Nick, ali veš, kje je v Ljubljani odprti bazen?* Jaz zelo rada plavam.

Nick: Ne, ne vem. Vprašati moraš Barbaro. Lahko jo tudi vprašaš, kje je teniško igrišče.


Nick: Ali misliš, da igra tenis pozimi, ko sneži?


Nick: Ti ga imaš v torbi.


Nick: *Nick, do you know where there is an open-air swimming pool in Ljubljana?* I very much like swimming.

Ann: No, I don't know. You must ask Barbara. You can also ask her where the tennis court is.

Nick: Tomaž plays tennis. He must know. But we're in the middle of the summer now and it is very hot.

Ann: Do you think he plays tennis in the winter when it snows?

Nick: Don't be rude! Oh, look at that beautiful building. ‘G L E D A L I ŠČ E’. What does it mean? Where do we have our dictionary?

Ann: *Yes, of course. Gledališče means theatre. Look, Barbara and Tomaž are already waiting for us. Do you see them?*
Vocabulary
odprti bazen  open-air pool
plavati  to swim
vprašati  to ask
sredi  in the middle of
poletje  summer

zima  winter
sneži  it snows
plemšće  theatre
nesramen  rude
torba  bag

Language points
To like to do something
You express ‘to like to do something’ with the correct personal ending of *rad* plus the verb with the correct personal ending, for example, *rad* (m.), *rada* (f.), *radi* (pl.):

**Ann rada pije čaj.**  Ann likes drinking coffee.  
**Nick rad pije kavo.**  Nick likes drinking coffee.
**Slovenči radi pijelo močno kavo.**  The Slovenes like drinking strong coffee.
**Ann rada plava.**  Ann likes swimming.
**Nick rad igra tenis.**  Nick likes playing tennis.

About sport
You express someone’s involvement with sport with the expression *ukvarjati se s športom*. For example:

**Ann se ukvarja s športom.**  Ann plays a lot of sport.  
*or*  Ann is into sport.
**Jaz se ne ukvarjam s športom.**  I’m not sporty.  
*or*  I’m not a sportsman.
**Ali se ti ukvarjaš s športom?**  Are you a sportsman?  
*or*  Are you into sport?  
*or*  Do you play a lot of sport?

Common sports in Slovenia are:

- tenis  tennis
- namizni tenis  table tennis
- nogomet  football
- rokomet  volleyball
- kosarka  basketball
- badminton  badminton
- hokey  hockey
- gimnastika  gymnastics
- drsanje  ice-skating
- smučanje  skiing

To say that you play a particular sport you use the verb *igrati*. You would, for example say:

**Tomaž igra tenis, rokomet, nogomet ...**

However, at times you express your involvement with a particular sport with the verb form of the sport, for example:

**plavati**  to swim
**jahati**  to ride
**smučati**  to ski

You can swim in:

**odprti bazen**  open-air pool
**zaprti bazen**  covered pool

Other recreational facilities are:

- športni park  sports park
- športno igrišče  playground
- rekreacijski center  leisure centre
- trim steza  running track
- drsalisce  skating rink

You may want to talk to Slovenes about cricket (krikel), golf (golf), or rugby (ragby) but they are unlikely to know much about them.
Seasons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pomlad</th>
<th>spring</th>
<th>jesen</th>
<th>autumn/fall</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>poletje</td>
<td>summer</td>
<td>zima</td>
<td>winter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you want to say that something is going on in a particular season you express this as follows:

- Spomladi in spring
- V jeseni in autumn/fall
- Pozimi in winter

The adjectives for the seasons are:

- Pomladni, spomladni, pomladanski
- Poletni
- Jesenski
- Zimski

What does it mean?

When you want to ask someone what a particular word means you say: Kaj to pomeni? or Kaj pomeni ...?

You may want to know how you say a particular thing. You ask:

Kako se reče ...? How do you say ...?

More about the accusative case

In the dialogue you have seen how the personal pronouns in the accusative case are used, as in:

| misli na | to think of |

Jaz ga imam v torbi.
Ali ju vidim?

There are a few expressions where you need to use the personal pronoun in the accusative case.

Ona misli na njega.
Mi mislimo na vas.

She thinks of him.
We think of you.

Exercise 11

| sestra | sister |

Tell your friend that:

1. The English like to play football.
3. Tomaz likes playing tennis.
4. You like playing badminton.
5. Your sister likes to ski.

Exercise 12

Test yourself! Kako se reče:

1. a stamp for a letter
2. a passport
3. an umbrella
4. a playground
5. autumn/fall

Exercise 13

Tell the person who had asked you what these words mean:

1. uradni dokument
2. Jesena izkaznica
Exercise 14

Choose adjectives you think are suitable for the following nouns. Bear in mind that they have to suit the noun grammatically and in meaning. Some adjectives are given below for you, but if you can think of any others do use them:

1. film
2. vreme
3. delo
4. jezik
5. kava
6. prijateljica

majhen, dober, lahek, nov, lep, slab, težek, star, grd, bogat, revem, pomemb.

Exercise 15

Pronunciation exercise. You have come across the three letters which do not exist in English: č, š, ž. Let's pronounce some words in which you have seen them:

letališče študent
četrtek učitelj
dežuje črn avto
hiša poštani nabiralnik
garaža športno igrišče

Dialogue for comprehension

Tomaz and Barbara have taken Nick and Ann for a coffee. Barbara goes to the bar to give their order and Tomaz and Nick start talking about sport. Find out what their plan for tomorrow is.

dolgočasen boring

Barbara: Natakarica, ali lahko naročim, prosím?
Natakarica: Ja, seveda. Kaj želite?
Barbara: Eno belo kavo, eno črno kavo, en sok in en čaj z limono.

Nick: Tomaz, ali greš pogosto v rekreacijski center?

Nick: Jaz ne igram kriket, ampak veliko mojih prijateljev igra to igro.
Tomaz: Ne morem razumeti. ... Meni se zdi tako dolgočasna...

Nick: Če malo premislš, tenis je tudi dolgočasna igra.
Tomaz: O, ne ... če želiš, greva lahko jutri igrat tenis.
Nick: Ja, Barbara in Ann pa gresta lahko plavat.
6 Kaj iščeš?
What are you looking for?

In this lesson you will learn about:
- The dative and the locative case
- More words and expressions about traffic
- Words and expressions describing weather
- More ways of expressing what you like
- How to express 'to go' and 'to be' somewhere

Dialogue 1

Mudi se nama!
We're in a hurry!

Tomaž and Barbara are leaving their house for their one-week holiday in England. They are getting their last few things ready.

Barbara: Kaj iščeš?
Tomaž: Avto je že v garaži.
Barbara: Sosedii moram napisati sporočilo. Hrana za psa je v hladilniku.
Tomaž: Pšu je treba dati še vodo.
Barbara: Ja. V hiši je vse v redu. Samo radio moram še ugasniti in grevi. Mudi se nama! Ali si pripravljen?
Barbara: What are you looking for?

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovenian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iskati (iščem)</td>
<td>to look for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dežnik</td>
<td>umbrella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dežuje</td>
<td>it rains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mrzlo je</td>
<td>it's cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plašč</td>
<td>coat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dnevni soba</td>
<td>living room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stoł</td>
<td>chair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kopalnica</td>
<td>bathroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ključ</td>
<td>key</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuhinja</td>
<td>kitchen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zapeljati</td>
<td>to put, to drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(zapeljem)</td>
<td>to run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sosed/sosed</td>
<td>neighbour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>napisati (napišem)</td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sporočilo</td>
<td>message</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrana</td>
<td>food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pes</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hladilnik</td>
<td>fridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voda</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radio</td>
<td>radio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit pripravljen</td>
<td>to be ready</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

You know the verb pisati, which means 'to write'. In this dialogue you have come across the verb napisati, which also means 'to write'. Some Slovene verbs have prefixes at times and this marginally changes the meaning; but we will look into this more thoroughly later on.

To go somewhere and to be somewhere

In lesson 1 you saw that the preposition v means 'in' as in v Slovenijii. V can also mean 'to' when you use it with the so-called verbs of movement. You would, for example, say:
When you say that you are in these places the nouns will have different endings, i.e. the endings of the locative case. You will say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sem v gledališču</th>
<th>I am in a/the theatre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>v trgovini</td>
<td>in a/the shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pri zdravniku</td>
<td>at the doctor's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pri prijatelju,</td>
<td>at my (male) friend's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pri prijateljici</td>
<td>(female) friend's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na pošti</td>
<td>at the post office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na sestanku</td>
<td>at the meeting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the singular, the endings of the locative and the dative case are the same. We will first study the dative case.

**The use of the dative case**

The dative case is most often used for an indirect object; this tells you to whom or for whom something is done. In English the prepositions 'to' and 'for' indicate an indirect object; in Slovene you simply need to put the correct ending on the noun and you do not translate the prepositions. The endings in the dative case are as follows.

The nouns of first and second declensions take the ending i. For example:

- **Ona je moja soseda.** She is my neighbour.
- **Moji sosedji pišem sporočilo.** I'm writing a message to my neighbour.

The nouns of third and fourth declensions take the ending u. For example:

- **On je moj sosed.** He is my neighbour.
- **Mojemu sosedu pišem sporočilo.** I'm writing a message to my neighbour.

Adjectives also have these endings.

**Personal pronouns in the dative case**

- **jaz** me  
  - to me
- **ti** tebi  
  - to you
- **on** njemu  
  - to him
- **ona** njej  
  - to her
- **ono** njemu  
  - to it
Everyday expressions about the weather

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovenian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mrzlo je</td>
<td>it is cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toplo je</td>
<td>it is warm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vroče je</td>
<td>it is hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soparno je</td>
<td>it is humid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some saje</td>
<td>the sun is shining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>somčno je</td>
<td>it is sunny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetrovno je</td>
<td>it is windy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dežuje</td>
<td>it is raining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sneži</td>
<td>it is snowing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Danes je lepo/slabo vreme. The weather is nice/bad today.
Zelo mrzlo/vroče je. It's cold/hot.

You use the personal pronoun in the dative or in the accusative case in order to describe how you feel, for example:

Zebe me. I'm cold.
Vroče mu je. He's hot.
Ali te zeh ali ti je vroče? Are you cold or hot?

Temperatura

Kakšen/-a/-o?

The question *kakšen?* means ‘what, what kind of, what is it like?’, as in *Kakšen avto imas?* (What car do you have?)

You also use this question when you ask about the weather, for example:

Kakšno je danes vreme? What's the weather like today?
Kakšno je vreme v Angliji, v Sloveniji? What's the weather like in England, in Slovenia?
The temperature in Slovenia is given in degrees Celsius as follows:

25°C petindvajset stopinj celzija

In the winter, the temperature might be
-5°C minus pet stopinj celzija

Notice how the temperature is given in the table below, with the heading "TEMPERATURE AROUND EUROPE yesterday at 8 a.m. and 2 p.m."

Also notice how European cities are spelt in Slovene:

The table below, with the cities in the different languages and the temperatures at 8 a.m. and 2 p.m.

To be in a hurry

To say that someone is in a hurry in Slovene, you use the expression "mudi se mi" (I'm in a hurry). This is a reflexive verb, and the personal pronoun (I) is included in the expression. For example:

Mudi se mi. I'm in a hurry.

Where are you in a hurry?

Kam hitis?

Kam hitis?

Začaj taka hitis?

Začaj taka hitis?

I'm rushing. I'm in a hurry!
Vklopi/izklopi, prižgati/ugasniti

The verbs *vklopi* and *prižgati* ‘to switch on’ and *izklopi* and *ugasniti* ‘to switch off’ are conjugated like all other verbs and are used as in English. For example:

Ali lahko vklopiš radio?  May I switch on the radio?
Zakaj ne ugasniš televizor?  Why don’t you switch off the TV?

Se/že/šele

You know all of these words:

še  still, yet
že  already, yet, before
šele  only, not later than, not until

Since they all have various possibilities in meaning and since they are used a lot in Slovene, here are a few sentences using these words for you to try to get your ear tuned to the way you can use them:

Ali še nisi gotov?  Aren’t you ready yet?
Ne poznam ga še.  I don’t know him yet.
Ali se je še spomniš?  Do you still remember her?
Ura je šele osem in sem že utrjen.  It is only 8 o’clock and I’m already tired.

Exercise 1

Answer the questions referring to the dialogue:
1 Kaj išče Tomaž?
2 Kje je njegov plašč?
3 Kje je njegov dežnik?
4 Kje je njegov ključ?
5 Kje jih mara za psi?

Exercise 2

Ask the people below if they are going to the places indicated, as in the example given. Use the familiar form of address.

Marko/work

Exercise 3

A friend is visiting you for a weekend. You are going out to the theatre one evening and before leaving the house you have this conversation. Fill in your part.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ključ od avta</th>
<th>car key</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

YOU: 1 Ask your friend what he is looking for.
YOU: 2 Tell him that you think his coat is in the living room.
YOU: 3 Say that it is cold. Tell him that the temperature is minus 2 degrees celsius and that it’s windy.
YOU: 4 Say yes. Ask him if he knows where the car key is.
YOU: 5 Ask if he is ready. Tell him that you (two) are in a hurry. Tell him that it is already 7 o’clock.

Exercise 4

Insert the words še, že or šele.

1 Ali si ... gotov?
2 Ne, nisem ... gotov.
3 Sporočilo moram ... napisati prijatelju.
4 Vsio smo ... pripravljeni, ti si pa ... v kopalnici.
5 Ne mudi se nam. Ura je ... tri.
Exercise 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>something</th>
<th>nekaj</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1 | Ask your friend:  
   Can you help me tomorrow afternoon? |
| 2 | Telephone your friend and say to him:  
   Can I come to your place this evening. I must tell you something. |
| 3 | You're telling your friend about something terrible that happened to you. Ask him:  
   Can you suggest what I should do? |
| 4 | You visited a friend who told you what an expensive coat she had bought. Say to her:  
   Show me your new coat! |
| 5 | You are in a café with your friend and you would like to order another drink. Ask him:  
   Are you in a hurry? |

Dialogue 2

Srečno pot!

Have a good trip!

Tomaž and Barbara are at the bus stop. They're waiting for the number 5 bus, which goes to the airport. They are already late and Tomaž hails a taxi.

Barbara: Tomaž, že pot ure čakava na avtohos in še ga ni. Ustavi ta taks!

(Tomaž hails a taxi and the taxi draws up.)

Takist: Kam želite iti?

Tomaž: Na letališče, prosim.

Takist: Vstopita!

Barbara: Danes je promet zelo gost. Zdi se mi, da gredo vsi iz mesta.

Takist: Ja, petek je in ob petkih je po navadi tako. In kam vidita potujeta?

Barbara: V Anglijo.

Takist: Ali gresta na službeno potovanje?

Barbara: Ne, na obisk. Prijatelje imava tam.

Takist: Moj prijatelj vozi tovornjak in pelje pogosto v Anglijo. Pravi, da mu tam ni všeč.


Takist: Ja, seveda gospa. Prav imate. Kako dolgo ostaneš?

Barbara: Deset dni.

(They get to the airport.)

Takist: Prijeten dopust! In srečno pot!

Barbara: Tomaž, we've already been waiting for the bus for half an hour and it hasn't come. Stop this taxi!

(Tomaž hails the taxi and the taxi draws up.)

Taksi-driver: Where do you want to go?

Tomaž: To the airport, please.

Taksi-driver: Get in!

Barbara: The traffic today is terrible. It seems to me that everyone is going out of town.

Taksi-driver: Yes, it is Friday and on Fridays it is usually like this. And where are you two going?

Barbara: To England.

Taksi-driver: Are you going for a business trip?

Barbara: No, for a visit. We have friends there.

Taksi-driver: A friend of mine drives a lorry and he often goes to England. He says he doesn't like it there.
Barbara: Everyone has their own tastes. We like it very much in England.
Taxi-driver: Yes, of course madam. You’re right. How long are you staying?
Barbara: Ten days.
(They get to the airport.)
Taxi-driver: Have a pleasant holiday! And have a good trip!

Vocabulary

Čakati to wait
Ustaviti to stop
Vstopiti to enter
gost heavy
Zdi se it seems
Potovali to travel

Službeno potovanje business trip
tovornjak lorry
biti všec to like
okus taste
ostati to stay

Language points

To like something

In lesson 4 you learnt that you express ‘to like something’ with the verb imeti plus rad/-a/o/-i and ‘to like to do something’ with rad/-a/o/-i plus the verb with the correct personal ending. There is an expression všeč mi je which literally means ‘it is pleasing to me’. You use this expression with the personal pronoun of the person you are referring to in the dative case. Note how Barbara says in the dialogue: Nama je všec Anglija. In the dialogue between Petra and Alenka you can see a few more examples using this expression:

Petra: Ali ti je všec Boštjan?
Alenka: Ne, Boštjan mi ni všec.
Petra: Tebi ni nihče všec.
Alenka: To ni res. Všeč mi je Boris.

It seems to me...

The verb zdi se means ‘to seem’, ‘to appear’. You use this reflexive verb with the personal pronoun of the person you are referring to in the dative case in order to express what seems or appears to someone. Note how Barbara says in the dialogue: Zdi se mi, da gredo danes vsi iz mesta. Here are a few more examples:

Ali se ti ne zdi, da je danes promet zelo gost.

Doesn’t it seem to you that the traffic is very heavy today?

Traffic

Artibus, vlak, letalo are all javni promet (public transport). If you drive a car you need vozniško dvslovjenje (a driving licence). When you do something wrong on the road you will have to plačati kazen (pay a fine). For the public transport you need vozovnico (a ticket). You can get enosmerno vozovnico (a one-way ticket) or povratno karto (a return ticket).

On the road you will also find:

Kolo bicycle
Kolesar a bicyclist
Vozovnica a ticket
Motorist a motorcyclist
Pešec pedestrian

More about the imperative

In lesson 4 you learnt about the imperative. Note how Barbara says to Tomaž: Ustavi tajaksi. The taxi-driver says to them: Vstopita! This is the dual form of the imperative, which you form as following:

1 Verbs of the -a conjugation
You drop the m from the first person singular and add jta:
Delati – delam – delajta!

2 Verbs of the -e conjugation
You drop the em from the first person singular and add jta:
pisati – pisem – pišta!

3 Verbs of the -i conjugation
You drop the m from the first person singular and add ta:
govoriti – govorim – govorita!
On most signs in Slovenia you will see a command expressed with the adjective **prepovedano** which means 'prohibited', for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kaditi prepovedano!</td>
<td>No smoking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parkijanje prepovedano!</td>
<td>No parking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vstop prepovedano!</td>
<td>No entry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you want to stop somebody from doing something, particularly people you know well, you use the imperative form of the verb **nchali** 'to stop' plus the infinitive, for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nehaj govorni!</td>
<td>Stop talking!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nehajst se smejati!</td>
<td>(You two) stop laughing!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nehajte kaditi!</td>
<td>Stop (you pl.) smoking!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nehajmo se prepirati!</td>
<td>Let's stop arguing!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Wish me a good trip**

There are a few phrases which you may like to use in order to wish someone certain things. You have noticed the taxi-driver saying **Srecno pot!**. This is what you say to someone who is going away; it literally means 'Have a safe drive'. He also said to Barbara and Tomaz **Prijeten dopusti!**, which means 'Have a good holiday'. Another word for a holiday is **počitnice** (pl.). This is used particularly for school holidays.

**Prijeten** means 'pleasant'; and you can wish all sorts of things to people using this adjective, for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prijeten večer!</td>
<td>Have a good evening!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prijetne počitnice!</td>
<td>Have a good holiday!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prijetene konec tedna!</td>
<td>Have a good weekend!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Vstopiti/Izstopiti**

The verb **vstopiti** means 'to enter' and the verb **izstopiti** means 'to exit', 'to get out'. From these verbs come the nouns **vstop** 'entrance' and **izstop** 'exit'.

The word for an entrance fee in Slovene is **vstopnina**.

**Exercise 6**

Answer these questions:

1. Kje sta Tomaz in Barbara?
2. Kam pelje avtobus številka 5?

**Exercise 7**

(a) Say that you are waiting for a bus / the train / your female friend.
(b) Say that Matic is waiting for his girlfriend / Sonja / the plane.

**Exercise 8**

Your secretary is on holiday for a week and you have to manage by yourself. You have no one to remind you of things and you write yourself these notes in your diary. Write them in Slovene:

1. On Tuesday I must go to the doctor.
2. I must go to get the paper tomorrow morning.
3. Silva must go to the post office in the afternoon.
4. I am going to visit a friend this evening.
5. I must get some milk and bread on Saturday.

**Exercise 9**

You are in a café chatting to a friend and among other things you say the following. Can you say it in Slovene?

1. This glass is empty.
2. In the south it is usually warm.
3. This street is narrow.
4. My neighbour Larisa is very friendly.
5. London is a big city.

**Exercise 10**

Suppose the table below is from today's newspaper. Study the table and make up sentences like the one which has been done for you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City</th>
<th>Weather</th>
<th>Temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>London</td>
<td>rain</td>
<td>7°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paris</td>
<td>warm</td>
<td>17°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berlin</td>
<td>rain</td>
<td>12°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moskva</td>
<td>cold</td>
<td>-22°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ljubljana</td>
<td>sunny</td>
<td>19°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rim</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>28°C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **V Londonu danes dežuje. Temperatura je sedem stopinj celzija.**
Dialogue 3

Lepo jo pozdravi!

Give her my regards!

Tomaž and Barbara are now in England and have been invited to Nick and Ann's house for tea.

Tomaž: O, to je ena malenkost za vaju.
Ann: Najlepša hvala. samo tretnutek, rože moram postaviti v vazo.
Nick: Ali sta prvič v Angliji?
Tomaž: Ne, jaz sem drugič, Barbara pa je tretjica. Oba zelo rada potujeva.
Ann: Jutri zvečer vaju nameravam peljati na koncert, v soboto pa lahko gremo na razstavo v narodni muzej.
Barbara: O, lepo, Mimogrede, ali se spomnimo Tatjane? Lepo te pozdravlja!
Barbara: Pogovarja se s Tomažem.
Tomaž: Oh, this is a little something for you.
Ann: Thank you very much. Just a moment, I must put these flowers in the vase.
Nick: Is this your first time in England?
Tomaž: No, I am here for the second time and Barbara for the third. We both love travelling very much.
Ann: I intend to take you to a concert tomorrow evening and on Saturday we can go to see an exhibition in a national museum.
Barbara: Oh, how interesting. By the way, do you remember Tatjana? She sends you her regards.
Ann: Give her my regards too. What can I offer you? Coffee? Tea? Where is Nick?
Barbara: He is talking to Tomaž.

Vocabulary

malenkost a small thing
rože flowers
postaviti to put
vaza vase
potovati to travel
nameravati to intend
percenti to remember
ponušiti to offer
pogovarjati se to converse

Language points

For the first time

To say that something is taking place for the first, the second, etc., time you need the masculine form of the ordinal numbers and the ending č, as in:

prvič for the first time
drugič for the second time
tretjic for the third time
cetrtic for the fourth time
petič for the fifth time
šestic ... for the sixth time ...
zadnjic for the last time

Note how Nick asks in the dialogue: Ali sta prvič v Angliji and Tomaž replies zas sem drugič Barbara pa že tretjič.

Peljati/peljati se, voziti/voziti se

These two verbs are more examples of verbs which are used differently when they are reflexive, for example:

Ta avtobus pelje na letališče. This bus goes to the airport.
Peljati te moram v gledališče. I must take you to the theatre.
Ali voziti? Are you driving?
Ta avtobus vozi tudi ob nedeljah. This hus also runs on Sundays.
Peljem se v mesto. I am going to the town.
Nikoli se ne peljem z avtom. I never go by car.
Zelo rada se vozi z avtobusom. She likes travelling by bus very much.
**Čakati**

When you say that you are waiting for somebody you normally don't need any preposition, but put the name of the person in the accusative case. For example:

- Čakam Mateja.  I'm waiting for Matej.
- Čakam Marijo.  I'm waiting for Marija.
- Ali me čakaš?  Are you waiting for me?
- Marija te čaka.  Marija is waiting for you.

When you are waiting somewhere or for something you usually need the preposition na, for example:

- Čakamo na prehod za pešce.  We're waiting at the zebra crossing.
- Čakana na avtobus, ne na vlak.  They (two) are waiting for the bus, not for the train.

The expression komaj čakam means 'I cannot wait'. You use it with the ending of the verb čakati in the person to whom you are referring, for example:

- Komaj čakamo.  We can't wait.
- Komaj čaka.  (He or she) can't wait.

**One's own**

Possessive pronouns have a reflexive form svoj, svoja, svoje, which is used when the idea of possession is directed back to the subject, for example:

- On se ne vozi s svojim avtom.  He doesn't drive his own car.
- Ali imaš svojo sobo?  Do you have your own room?
- Vsak mora imeti svoj potni list.  Everybody must have their own passport.

**When you want to give your regards to someone**

Pozdrav means 'greeting' and pozdraviti means 'to greet'. When you want to give someone your regards you use pozdraviti and the personal pronoun in the accusative form. Note how Barbara says to Ant: Lepo te pozdravja. The person who will tell you this will say: (someone) te/vas pozdravija. In the dialogue Barbara says Tatjana te pozdravija.

It is a convention to say Hvala enako meaning 'Thank you, give her my regards too'.

In Slovene you are always talking 'with' somebody as opposed to 'to' somebody, as in English. When you say that you are talking to somebody you need to use the endings of the locative case: you can see more about this in lesson 11.

**Exercise 11**

Re-arrange these lines so that they will make up a conversation:

- Dobro, hvala, in ti?
- Pojdi k zdravniku!
- Ne počujem se dobro.
- Dobert dan, kako si?
- Mimogrede, Alenka te lepo pozdravja.
- Ja, namcravam iši jutri popoldne.
- Hvala enako.

**Exercise 12**

(a) Križanka

1. to play
2. must
3. to recommend
4. to help
5. to come
6. to think
7. to stand
8. to have
9. to speak

(b) Can you remember the Slovene for the words in italics? Test yourself! ☒

1. You go for a drink with a friend where a sign in the bar says No smoking.
2. You are just about to park your car when you notice the sign No parking.
You are in a theatre and the performance is about to begin but your friend is still telling you something. Say to him Stop talking.

You think you are going to the lavatory in a restaurant when someone calls after you Excuse me, no entry here.

You are going away for some time and people say to you Have a good trip and a pleasant holiday.

Exercise 13

How could you say that the following people are in a hurry, using the personal pronouns?
1. we
2. you (familiar form)
3. he
4. she
5. you (polite form)

Exercise 14

Which in each line of words is the odd one out, and why?
1. kopalnica, kuhišča, dežnik, dnevna soha
2. mleko, radio, voda, kruh
3. dežuje, sneži, sporočilo, mrzlo je
4. povodati, pokazati, sosed, svetovati
5. šestič, četrtnič, osmi, petič

Exercise 15

Pronunciation exercise. In this lesson you have learned that the letters k and h are prepositions both meaning 'to', as in 'I am going to my friend's place'. The preposition h is used before nouns starting with k or g, k is used before all other nouns. Let's practise reading out the sentences below, where these prepositions are used.

Ali greš k zdravniku?
Ne, k prijatelju grem.
Pridite h kositu.
H gulažu jem zmeraj polento.
Po kositu grem k Tatjani.
Jaz moram pa h gospodu Dolencu.

Dialogue for comprehension

It has been arranged during the day that Ann and Barbara will go to the opera on their own that evening. Ann organizes the evening. How are they going to go to town and why?

BARBARA: Prvič grem v opero v Londonu.
ANN: Ali greš v Ljubljani pogosto?
BARBARA: Ne, Tomažu opera ni všeč. Ampak velikokrat greva v kino. Ali greva sedaj z avtobusom?
ANN: Ne, z vlakom. Jaz imam avto, ampak promet tukaj je ohupen. Moj avto je skoraj vedno v garafi. Raje se vozim z vlakom.
BARBARA: Ja, promet je res zelo gost. In vsi ti avtomobili na lev strani ceste. Vedno se mi zdi, da bo vsak trenutek nesreča.
ANN: Nisi navajena. Ali ti veliko voziš?
BARBARA: Ne, skoraj nikoli. Tomaž ima zmeraj avto. Vozi se v službo. In kadar greva kam skupaj, vozi on. Ali se sama mudi?
ANN: Ne, predstava se začne ob osmih, sedaj je ura šele šest.
BARBARA: Ali imava čas še za eno kavo?
ANN: Ja, če želiš, lahko greva v mestu na kavo.
7 Kako je bilo?
How was it?

In this lesson you will learn about:
- Ways of talking about past events
- More adjectives
- More time expressions
- How Slovene adverbs are formed
- Some members of a family
- How to say that something hurts you
- Some parts of the body

Dialogue 1

Ne vprašaj, kaj se je zgodilo
Don't ask what's happened

Tomaž and Barbara have returned from England. Eva, a friend of Barbara telephones her and asks about it.

EVA: Kako je bilo?
BARBARA: Vse je bilo odlíčno, ampak imela sva slabo vreme. Tomaž se sedaj malo prahlajen in glava ga boli. Jutri dopoldne gre k zdravniku. Ali se je tvoja hčerka že vrnila iz študentskega izleta?
EVA: Ja, tudi ona se je imela lepo. Veliko je slikala. Moram ti pokazati fotografije.
BARBARA: Joj, jaz se jezim, zato ker sva midva pozabilo fotoaparat.
EVA: Ne vprašaj, kaj se je zgodilo moji hčerk Sandri. Zadnji dan so ji ukradli fotoaparat. Šta je na stranišče in za trenutek ga je pustila na mizi v kavnari. In ko je prišla nazaj, ga ni več bilo.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>odlíčno</td>
<td>very well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prehlajen-a</td>
<td>to have flu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glava</td>
<td>head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boli</td>
<td>hurts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vrniti se</td>
<td>to get back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slikati</td>
<td>to take photographs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pokazati</td>
<td>to show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pozabiti</td>
<td>to forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fotoaparat</td>
<td>camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zgoditi se</td>
<td>to happen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ukrasti</td>
<td>to steal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stranišče</td>
<td>lavatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dovolj</td>
<td>enough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>previden</td>
<td>careful</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The Slovene word for lavatory is stranišče. However, on most public lavatories you will see the sign WC (pronounced 'vey tsay').

Language points

Past tense

To form the past tense in Slovene you use the present tense of the verb 'to be' plus the participle ending in -i, which you form by dropping the -i ending of the infinitive and adding:


Barbara: Obupno! Ne moreš biti dovolj previden! Ali sta se vidna že odločila, kam gresta septembra?
EVA: Ne še točno, ampak verjetno greva nekam na jug.
EVA: How was it?
BARBARA: Everything was wonderful but the weather was bad. Tomaž has flu now and a headache. He is going to the doctor's tomorrow morning. Has your daughter got back from her student trip yet?
EVA: Yes, she also had a good time. She took lots of photographs. I must show them to you.
BARBARA: Oh, I am annoyed because we forgot our camera.
EVA: Don't ask what happened to my daughter Sandra. On her last day she had her camera stolen. She went to the lavatory and left it on the table in the café for a moment. And when she came back it wasn't there any more.
BARBARA: Terrible! You can't be careful enough! Have you two decided yet where you're going in September?
EVA: Not exactly, but we're probably going somewhere south.
singular where se is placed in between the verb and the participle ending in l. In the negative form se is placed in front of the auxiliary and the verb when using the personal pronoun or between the negative auxiliary (nisem, nisi) and the verb when you aren't using the personal pronoun.

You put ali in front of the sentence to form a question in the past tense. To make a sentence negative you replace the positive form of the verb 'to be' by its negative equivalent. Here are a few examples:

Ali si bil-a v Angliji? Have you been to England?
Ja, bil-a sem v Angliji. Yes, I've been to England.
Ne, nisem bil-a v Angliji. No, I haven't been to England.

Ali ste imeli lepo vreme? Did you have good weather?
Ja, imeli smo lepo vreme. Yes, we had good weather.
Ne, nismo imeli lepega vremena. No, we didn't have good weather.

Ali se je tvoja hčerka že vrnila? Has your daughter got back yet?
Ja, vrnila se je že. Yes, she's already got back.
Ne, ni se še vrnila. No, she hasn't got back yet.

Whilst there are several past tenses in English there is only one past tense in Slovene. Do not translate English auxiliary words like 'was, were, had'. The following sentences are all translated as Delal je:

He worked.
He was working.
He had been working.
He had worked.

You know the verbs dežuje (it rains) and sneži (it snows). They are irregular in the past tense and you say:

deževalo je it rained
snežilo je it snowed

Word order

Because every verb has its ending, which clearly indicates the person, and because all the nouns are declined, which indicates their function in a sentence, the word order in Slovene is less strict than the word order in English.
When personal pronouns in the accusative or dative case are used in the past tense the pronoun is usually placed between the auxiliary verb 'to be' and the participle, for example:

Včeraj sem jo videl.  I saw her yesterday.
Nisem mu pomagal.  I didn't help him.

How are you?

As in English, there are several ways of asking someone how they are. By now you have come across: Kako si ste?, Kako ti vem gre? In this lesson you will have noticed Eva saying Tudi ona se je imela lepo, meaning 'She also had a good time.' This is a more colloquial way of asking someone how they are, by using the verb imeti in reflexive form, for example:

Kako se imas?  How are you?
Slabo, slab se pocutim. Not well, I'm not feeling well. I have a headache.
Glava me bole.  My head hurts.
Kako ste se imeli na dopustu?  How was your holiday?
Na dopustu smo se imeli zelo lepo.  We had a very good time on our holiday.

What is hurting you?

When you want to say that something hurts, you use the word bole and a personal pronoun in the accusative case depending on whom you are referring to. Notice how Barbara says Glava me bole, meaning 'His head hurts.' You use this expression for other parts of the body, for example:

gelo  throat
zob  tooth
roka  hand, arm
noga  leg
trehu  belly
zelodec  stomach

The question 'What is hurting you?' is Kaj te/vas bole?

Passive

A passive construction does exist in Slovene but it is used much less than in English. Whilst in English it is very natural to use the passive in a sentence like 'I had my camera stolen or I was told, that ...', you cannot use the passive in Slovene. You must not try to look for words with which you could express this idea word for word in a passive construction because it will not work. In sentences like the ones above you would use the word nekdo (someone, somebody) and you would say:

Nekdo mi je ukradel fotoaparat. Someone stole my camera.
Nekdo mi je povedal, da ... Someone told me that ...

More expressions about time

letos  this year
prihodnje/drugo leto  next year
lani  last year
pojutnjenjem  the day after tomorrow
včeraj  yesterday
predvčerajnjim  the day before yesterday

In English 'a.m.' and 'p.m.' are used to describe the part of the day. Here are some expressions for the parts of the day:

zgodaj  early in the morning
zjutraj  in the morning
dopoldne  in the morning
opoldne  at noon
popoldne  in the afternoon
zvečer  in the evening
pozno  late in the evening
poniti  during the night

Adjectives and adverbs

In lesson 2 you learnt some adjectives and their opposite meanings. Here are a few more examples:

topel  warm
poln  full
dolgh  long
širih  wide

mrzel  cold
pražen  empty
kratih  short
ozk  narrow

Some Slovene adjectives form their opposite meanings by adding the prefix ne. This occurs when the meaning is negative as in:

zanimiv  interesting
prijazen  friendly
prečen  happy
udoben  comfortable
nezanimiv  uninteresting
neprijazen  unfriendly
nesrečen  unhappy
neudoben  uncomfortable
All these adjectives are in the masculine form but you know that Slovene adjectives have a masculine, feminine or neuter form depending on the gender of the noun they modify. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>težek</td>
<td>težka</td>
<td>težko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lahak</td>
<td>lahka</td>
<td>lahko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>odličen</td>
<td>odlična</td>
<td>odlično</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prijazen</td>
<td>prijazna</td>
<td>prijazno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>udoben</td>
<td>udobna</td>
<td>udobno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prijeten</td>
<td>prijetna</td>
<td>prijetno</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The neuter form of the adjective is also the adverb in Slovene, for example:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tiho</td>
<td>quietly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hitro</td>
<td>quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>razločno</td>
<td>clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glasno</td>
<td>loudly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>počasi</td>
<td>slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nerazločno</td>
<td>unclearly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prosim, govorite razločno. Please speak clearly.
On govori zelo tiho, hitro in razločno. He speaks very quietly, quickly and clearly.
Ali je tukaj prosto ali zasedeno? Is this place free or engaged?

The question ‘how?’ is kako? To this question you will need an adverb as an answer. You may remember the question Kako si? which you answer with Dobro, regardless of whether you are a man or a woman. This is because dobro is an adverb and also the neuter form of the adjective.

Note how Eva asks in the dialogue Kako je hilo? and Barbara answers Bilo je odlično.

Compass points

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kompas</th>
<th>compass</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The adjectives of the points of the compass are:

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>severni</td>
<td>northern</td>
<td>vzhodnį</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>južni</td>
<td>southern</td>
<td>zahodnį</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you want to say that something is happening in one of these use the preposition na and the nouns get the ending u:

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>na severu</td>
<td>in the north</td>
<td>na vzhodu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na jugu</td>
<td>in the south</td>
<td>na zahodu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When something is north of, south of, etc., you say:

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>severno od</td>
<td>north from/of</td>
<td>vzhodno od</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>južno od</td>
<td>south from/of</td>
<td>zahodno od</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can make compounds as follows:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>severovzhod</td>
<td>north east</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jugozahod</td>
<td>south west</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also form adjectives which will, depending on the gender of the noun they modify, take appropriate endings:

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>severovzhoden/-dina/-o</td>
<td>northeastern or northeasterly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jugozahoden/-dina/-o</td>
<td>southwestern or southwesterly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You already know the names of some countries. Here is an additional list of some countries you may want to use; you will recognize their names, apart from, perhaps, Mađarska (Hungary): Kanada, Finska, Švérska, Irská, Nizozemska, Portugalska, Grčija, Švedska, Norveška, Škotska.
Exercise 1
A family you know have just returned from their holiday. Talk to them about it!

1 How was it?
2 Did it rain?
3 In June?
4 But in the north it is usually like that:
Sredi poletja!
Kakorkoli, naslednjim gremo nekam na jug.
5 I'm also going to the south in October.
6 To Greece.

Exercise 2
You share a flat and your flatmate is always asking you questions about what you've done or what you will do. You answer them vaguely. Can you translate the sentences in italics, which are answers you could give her?

1 Early in the morning, at 6 o'clock.
2 No, in the afternoon I was at my male friend's house.
3 Late in the evening.
4 No, unfortunately not. I have a meeting this afternoon at 4 o'clock.
5 No, I'm going to the cinema tomorrow evening.

Exercise 3
You have just got back from your holiday and you meet a nosy neighbour who always asks you about what you are doing. You have to be polite and answer her questions:

Kdaj si šel včeraj v službo?
1 Early in the morning, at 6 o'clock.
Ali si bil ves dan v službi?
2 No, in the afternoon I was at my male friend's house.
Kaj pa jutri zvečer?
3 Late in the evening.
Ali imaš danes popoldne čas?
4 No, unfortunately not. I have a meeting this afternoon at 4 o'clock.
Ali je vaša hčerka že doma?
5 No, I'm going to the cinema tomorrow evening.

Exercise 4
Answer as suggested in full sentences:

1 Kako bere Sonja? (slowly and clearly)
2 Kako poje Pavarotti? (loudly)
3 Kako je bilo v gledališču? (interesting)
4 Kako si se imela na dopustu? (very well)
5 Ali je bila ta vaja lahka ali težka? (easy)

Exercise 5
Which are the neighbouring countries of Slovenia? Fill them in! (If you need help, see the map on p. 2).

1 Severno od Slovenije je ...
2 Južno od Slovenije je ...
3 Zahodno od Slovenije je ...
4 Vzhodno od Slovenije je ...

Dialogue 2

Zaljubila se je

She fell in love

On his way home from work, Tomaz met Sandra, Eva's daughter. He asks about her holiday and she tells him how she has fallen in love in Italy. As he gets home he tells Barbara about it.
Tomaz:
Na poti domov sem srečal Sandro, čisto po naključju.
Zelo je rjava.

Barbara:
Ja, vem da je že doma. Eva mi je telefonirala. Ali ti je povedala, kaj se ji je zgodilo?

Tomaz:
Ja, zaljubila se je v enega Italijana.

Barbara:
A res? O tem nič ne vem. Eva ni ničesar omenila. Kaj ti je še povedala?

Tomaz:
Hoče se poročiti.

Barbara:
Ampak stra je komaj 18 let. Ali je povedala Evi?

Tomaz:
Gotovo ne ve. Moram jo poklicati nazaj in ji povedati. Meni je samo povedala, kako so ji ukradli fotoaparat.

Barbara:
Yes, I know she's already at home. Eva telephoned me. Did she tell you what had happened to her?

Tomaz:
Yes, she's fallen in love with an Italian.

Barbara:
Oh really? I know nothing about this. Eva didn't mention anything. What else did she tell you?

Tomaz:
She wants to marry him.

Barbara:
But she's only nineteen. Did she tell Eva?

Tomaz:
I doubt it.

Barbara:
She certainly doesn't know. I must call her back and tell her. She only told me how they stole her camera.

Notice how Barbara says to Tomaz: Moram jo (Evo) poklicati nazaj! 'I must call her (Eva) back!'

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>srečati</td>
<td>to meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>čisto po naključju</td>
<td>quite by chance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zaljubiti se</td>
<td>to fall in love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poročiti se</td>
<td>to get married</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>komaj</td>
<td>only, hardly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dvomiti</td>
<td>to doubt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nazaj</td>
<td>back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A res?</td>
<td>Oh, really?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

Call me!

As in English, there are two verbs to express 'to telephone someone':

telefonirati to telephone
poklicati to call

By chance

The words for 'chance' are naključje or slučaj. When you want to say that something has happened by chance you say po naključju or slučajno. Notice how Tomaz tells Barbara: Sandru sem srečal, čisto po naključju, meaning 'I met Sandra by chance'. The word čisto in this context is an adverb, meaning 'quite', 'entirely', 'purely'. You can use it as in the following examples:

Čisto prav imas! You're quite right!
Čisto vse sem ti povedal. I told you everything.

Clean/dirty

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plaža</td>
<td>beach</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The word čisto is also an adjective and it means 'clean' as opposed to umazan 'dirty'. For example:

Plaža je bila zelo umazana.
Njeno stanovanje je zmeraj čisto.

The beach was very dirty.
Her flat is always clean.

Members of a family

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>družina</td>
<td>family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>starši</td>
<td>parents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oče ali ata in mama</td>
<td>father and mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stari starši</td>
<td>grandparents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stari ata, oče (dedek)</td>
<td>grandfather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stara mama (babica)</td>
<td>grandmother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otroci</td>
<td>children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sin</td>
<td>son</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hčerka</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vnuki</td>
<td>grandchildren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vnuk</td>
<td>grandson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vnukinja</td>
<td>granddaughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brat</td>
<td>brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sčestra</td>
<td>sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teta</td>
<td>aunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stric</td>
<td>uncle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sestrična</td>
<td>female cousin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bratnec</td>
<td>male cousin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can find a few more family relations in the glossary at the back of the book.

The use of personal pronouns in the dative and in the accusative case

Look at the following examples:

(1) Glava ga boli.
Srečal sem jo.
Nisem vas videl.
He has a headache. (literally 'His head hurts him')
I met her.
I didn't see you.

(2) Kaj se mu je zgodilo?
Povedal sem ji.
To sem vam dal že včeraj.
What's happened to him?
I told her.
I gave this to you yesterday.

In the first list you see how the personal pronouns in the accusative case are used and in the second you see the use of personal pronouns in the dative case. You can construct more complex sentences using them both. In the dialogue, Eva could have said

Ukradli so ji ga. Ji would refer to Sandra (from the context we know that she is talking about Sandra), ga refers to the camera (again, from the context we know she is referring to the camera).

This is something Slovenes use all the time, in spoken and in written language. You may find it difficult at the beginning because of all the 'little words'. Let’s have a look at another example: We can ask:

Kaj se Ji je zgodilo? or Kaj se mu je zgodilo?

se in both sentences indicates a reflexive verb.
je indicates the past tense.
ji in the first sentence tells us we are asking about a woman, i.e. what has happened to her.
mu in the second sentence tells us we are asking about a man, i.e. what has happened to him.

All these words are called enditics and you will see more about them in the lessons to come.

Exercise 6

Match the questions below with appropriate responses:

1. Kaj te boli?
2. Ali si dobre volje?
3. Ali je bil natakar prijazen?
4. Ali ste imeli lepo vreme?
5. Kdaj je prišla Eva domov?

(a) Ne, imeli smo slab vreme.
(b) Ne, neprijazen je bil.
(c) Včeraj, poznato zvečer.
(d) Glava me boli.
(e) Ne, slab vologe sem.

Exercise 7

Put the adjectives in brackets into the correct form in Slovene:

1. Že ves tedan je (bad) vreme.
2. Ta cesta je zelo (narrow).
3. Tisti film je bil zelo (uninteresting).
4. Bila sem (sure), da je danes sreda.
5. Martin, ali si (hungry) ali (thirsty)?
Exercise 8

You have been invited to a wedding with a friend of yours where you hardly know anyone. A woman you meet is quite happy to tell your friend who is who and you have to listen to the conversation. Can you do it in Slovene?

1. **THE WOMAN**: Is Gregor your brother?
2. **YOUR FRIEND**: No, he is my cousin. But I haven’t seen him for a very long time.
3. **THE WOMAN**: I know him. He was at school with my son. Do you know Irena?
4. **YOUR FRIEND**: Yes, she went to England for a year.
5. **THE WOMAN**: She has already come back.
6. **YOUR FRIEND**: Why didn’t she stay there for a year?
7. **THE WOMAN**: Oh, I know but I can’t tell you.

Exercise 9

You know the Slovene word for ‘but’. Write down the following sentences connecting them with ‘but’, as in the example given below:

> Včeraj je deževalo, ampak bilo je toploto.

1. The weather was terrible. We had a good time.
2. It was very cold. In the north it is always like that.
3. My friend is already home. I haven’t seen him yet.
4. I am going on holiday in August. I haven’t decided yet where.
5. I worked all day. I’m not tired.

Exercise 10

An old friend wrote to you telling you about what has been going on in his life recently. Fill in the missing words given in brackets.

| neseča | pregnant |

1. Lani, septembra (I got married).
2. Prodal sem (my old flat) in kupil (a small house).
3. (My parents) so nama pomagali.
4. Kupila sva tudi avto ampak prejsnji mesec (we had it stolen).
5. (This year) nisva šla na dopust, zato ker je moja žena (pregnant).

Dialoge 3

**Kako mu je ime?**

*What is his name?*

Sandra has arranged to meet her friend Sabina to tell her about her new love and after Sandra has been going on about him for hours Sabina manages to ask a few questions.

**SABINA:** Kako mu je ime?

**SANDRA:** Emilijo. Pogledi! Tukaj sva na plaži!

**SABINA:** Ali je Italijan?

**SANDRA:** Ja, iz Rima je.

**SABINA:** Koliko je star?

**SANDRA:** Dvaindvajset. Ali ti je všeč?

**SABINA:** Kje si ga spoznala? Ali je bil tudi on na izletu?

**SANDRA:** Ja, tudi on je študent. Študira arhitekturo. V Milanu. Zelo dobro igraitaro in lepo poje.

**SABINA:** Ali je tudi on zaljubljen v tebe?

**SANDRA:** Prepročana sem. Zadnji dan sem mu podarila moj fotoaparat. Za spomin!

**SABINA:** What’s his name?

**SANDRA:** Emilijo. Look! Here we’re on the beach!

**SABINA:** Is he Italian?

**SANDRA:** Yes. He’s from Rome.

**SABINA:** How old is he?

**SANDRA:** Twenty-two. Do you like him?

**SABINA:** Yes. Where did you meet him? Was he also on a trip?

**SANDRA:** Yes, he is also a student. He studies architecture. In Milan. And he plays the guitar very well and sings beautifully.

**SABINA:** Is he also in love with you?

**SANDRA:** I’m sure. The last day I gave him my camera. As a memento!

**Vocabulary**

- **spoznati** to meet
- **kitara** guitar
- **spomin** to give as a present
Language points

Negative questions

As in English, you can ask negative questions which usually suggest surprise. In Slovene you simply start the question with ali and put the verb into its negative form, for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ali še nisi končal?</td>
<td>Haven't you finished yet?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ali nisi bila v službi?</td>
<td>Haven't you been to work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ali ti ni pisal?</td>
<td>Didn't he write to you?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Where are they from?

The question ‘Where are you from?’ is iz kod si, ste, je...? The town or the country you will be given as an answer will be in the genitive case, about which you will see more later on. Most of the countries you have learned so far have ended in a and they will take an e ending in the genitive, if someone is from these countries, for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ali si iz Italije?</td>
<td>Are you from Italy?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ne, iz Španije sem. In ti?</td>
<td>No, I'm from Spain. And you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jaz sem iz Anglije, moja punca pa iz Francije.</td>
<td>I'm from England, and my girlfriend is from France.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note how Sandra told Sabina that Emilio is from Rome (iz Rima). masculine nouns take an a ending when you use them after the preposition iz, for example: iz Rima, iz Londona, iz Pariza, iz Berlina, iz Madrida, and so on. When the name of a town ends in a as, for example, in Moskva, the a ending will change to e: iz Moskve, iz Lizbone, iz Zeneve.

Describing people

The most common means of describing a person are by describing their hair, height, eyes, build, weight, and so on. Here are a few examples of how you can describe someone in Slovene:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On/ona ima dolge laso.</td>
<td>He/she has long hair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kratke laso.</td>
<td>short hair.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ima lepe/zeleni/sivi/modre oči.</td>
<td>He/she has beautiful/green/ grey/blue eyes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Zelo visok/-a je. He/she is very tall.
Zelo majhen/-hna je. He/she is very short.
Debel/-a je. He/she is fat.
Vitek/-tka je. He/she is slim.

There is an expression sem čisto suh/-a meaning ‘I'm broke, without any money’.

Do you play an instrument?

When you want to say that you play an instrument you use the verb igrati and the instrument will be in the accusative case, for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kitara</td>
<td>guitar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>klavir</td>
<td>piano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harmonika</td>
<td>accordion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violina</td>
<td>violin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emilio igra kitaro.</td>
<td>Emilio plays a guitar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ali igra klavir?</td>
<td>Do you play the piano?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moj stric igra harmoniko.</td>
<td>My uncle plays the accordion.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 11

1. Ask a friend who doesn’t seem to you to be well What is hurting you?
2. Say to someone with whom you have to make an arrangement Call me tomorrow!
3. You have heard that something has happened to a female acquaintance of yours. Ask What has happened to her?
4. A male friend of yours has a new girlfriend. Ask him Where did you meet her?
5. Ask him also Where is she from?

Exercise 12

On your way home you overhear this conversation between two women on the train. Could you tell it to a Slovene friend of yours in Slovene?

A: Have you seen this film yet?
B: Yes, didn’t I tell you?
A: Maybe, but I don’t remember. I forget. Did you like it?
B: No, I didn’t like it.
A: Why not?
B: It seemed to me to be boring.

Exercise 13

Križanka

Down
1 traffic light
2 throat
3 aunt
4 tooth
5 exercise
6 dog
7 west
8 daughter
9 beach
10 guitar

What word do you get at 11 across?

Exercise 14

(a) Complete the sentences below with the following words: visok, težka, slabo, ozka, malo, suh.
1 Eno ... pivo, prosim.
2 Njen fant je zelo ... in ...
3 Imeli smo ... vreme.
4 Ta ulica je zelo ...
5 Ta vaja ni bila ...  

(b) Rewrite the sentences above and change the meaning by replacing the words you filled in with their opposite meaning.

Exercise 15

Pronunciation exercise. The letter I has two sounds in Slovene. When it is placed before a vowel or before the letter j it is pronounced I as in letalo, letališče, lani, glava, grlo, ljudje. When I is placed at the end of the word or before any other consonant but j it is pronounced as w as in:

dopoldan morning
popoldan afternoon
cel dan all day

In the past tense the participles ending in I denote masculine gender and are pronounced as w as in:

Tomaž mi je povedal.
Ali si videl Sandro?
Kupil sem si slovenski slovar.
Bil sem v službi.
Srečal sem Mateja.

Dialogue for comprehension

Barbara does not want to call Eva, Sandra’s mother, because she does not want to interfere with Sandra’s affairs but she feels she must talk to someone about this. She calls Sabina’s mother in the hope that she will have learned something from her daughter. Find out what Sandra wants to do next and what has happened to the camera

Anita: Ja, kaj?
Barbara: Tomaž je včeraj na poti domov čisto slučajno srečal Sandro. Ali je Sandra kaj povedala Sahini o izletu?
Anita: Ali misliš Emilijo?
Barbara: O, ali mu je ime Emilijo?
Anita: Ja, Sandra pravi, da ima dolge lase. Videla je slike.
Barbara: Baje piše pesmi in igra kitaro.
Anita: Ali Eva ve kaj o tem?
Anita: Dvomim. Ampak Sandra hoče iti nazaj v Italijo.
Barbara: Uboga Eva. Sigurna sem, da nič ne ve. Meni je samo povedala, kako so ji ukradli fotoaparat.
Anita: Saj ji ga niso ukrali. Sandra mu ga je zadnji dan podarila, za spomin.
8 Moram se preseliti!
I must move!

In this lesson you will learn about:
- Ways of talking about future events
- Houses and flats
- How Slovene verbs are formed and used
- Expressing a mild command or a wish
- How to express the impersonal 'one'

Dialogue 1

Ta soba je premajhna!
This room is too small!

Robert, after five months in Slovenia, is still living in a hotel. He is desperate to find a flat but so far hasn't been successful. Matej goes to see him one afternoon with a piece of good news.

MATEJ: Kako ti gre?


ROBERT: Kot veš, videl sem že sto stanovanj, ampak z vsakim je nekaj narobe. Ali je premajhno, ali predago, ali pa predaleč iz mesta. Ali veš, kje je tisto trosobno stanovanje in koliko stane najemnina?

Vocabulary

postajati to become
pogrešati to miss
pisalna miza desk
papir paper
oddajati stanovanja to let flats

MATEJ: Praktično v centru je. Nad eno pekarno. Ali imaš plan mesta?
ROBERT: Ja, imam dva, ampak trenutno ne najdem nobenega.

MATEJ: Ali si zainteresiran? Ali naj pokličem Sabino?
ROBERT: Ja, prosim.

MATEJ: How is it going?
ROBERT: In the summer it is too hot here for me. And this room is getting really too small. I miss the desk most. I have all my books and papers on the floor.

MATEJ: As I mentioned on the telephone, I met Sabina last night. Her aunt lets flats and apparently she has a studio flat on offer at the moment and next week someone moves out of a three-room flat.

ROBERT: As you know, I've seen a hundred flats already but there is something wrong with every one. It is either too small, too expensive, or too far out of town. Do you know where that three-room flat is and how much it costs?

MATEJ: It is practically in the centre. Above a bakery. Do you have a plan of the town?

ROBERT: Yes, I have two but at the moment I can't find either.

MATEJ: Are you interested? Shall I call Sabina?

ROBERT: Yes, please.

Language points

To live somewhere

You have come across the verbs živeti and stanovati, both meaning 'to live'. They are marginally different in meaning. Compare these sentences:

Živim v Sloveniji. I live in Slovenia.
Tim že dolgo živi v Šivici.
Stanujem v centru.
Moj stric sedaj stanuje v novi hiši.

Živeti gives a wider implication; the noun življenje (life) comes from it. Stanovati tells you where someone lives; the noun stanovanje (flat) comes from it.

It is too...

When you want to say that something is ‘too...’ (as, for example, ‘too expensive’) you put the prefix pre- in front of the adjective, for example:

- To stanovanje je predrago. This flat is too expensive.
- Ta soba je premajhna. This room is too small.
- To je predaleč iz mesta. This is too far out of town.

Houses and flats

You live either in a house (hiša), or in a flat (stanovanje). A block of flats is called stanovanski blok, and you may be told Stanujem v bloku (I live in a block of flats). You can have a studio flat (garsonjera), a one-bedroom flat (enosobno stanovanje), a two-bedroom flat (dvosobno stanovanje), etc. When you have, say, a two-bedroom flat you don’t count your kitchen and bathroom as a room but you do count the living-room. In other words a two-bedroom flat consists of a kitchen, bathroom and two rooms. You can have your own house or flat (svorno hiša ali svoje stanovanje) or rent one, which you express with imeti v najemu, in which case you pay rent (najemnina). For example:

V najemu imamo dvozoban stanovanje v centru. Plačujemo visoko najemnino.
We are renting a three-bedroom flat in the centre. We pay a high rent.

When buying houses or flats people usually take on a mortgage (kredit).

Vrt means ‘garden’. Almost all private houses have one and it usually has an area where there is lawn with trees, plants and flowers and an area where some basic vegetables are grown.

You may move into a furnished flat (opremljeno stanovanje), or into an unfurnished flat (neopremljeno stanovanje), in which case you will have to buy your own furniture (pohištvo). The names of the usual rooms in a flat or in a house are:

- kuhinja kitchen
- kopalnica bathroom
- spalnica bedroom
- sedalica living room
- otroška soba child’s room
- straniše lavatory

The words for basic furniture items are:

- pohištvo furniture
- postelja bed
- miza table
- kavč couch
- stal chair
- police shelves
- omara wardrobe
- kuhinski elementi kitchen units

Other equipment and appliances you need in a house are:

- štedilnik cooker, stove
- hladilnik fridge
- zmrzovalnik freezer
- pralni stroj washing machine
- kuhinjski elementi kitchen units
- sesalni stroj vacuum cleaner
- likalnik iron

Plural nouns

As in English, there are plural nouns in Slovene. This means that when a plural noun is the subject of the verb it is used in a plural verb e.g. ‘police are...’. Plural nouns like this may not have a plural equivalent in Slovene. In Slovene, for example, policej is a singular noun and you say policej je (is)...

The words vrata (door) and tla (floor) are always plural in Slovene. When you use these nouns, the verb must also be in the plural, for example:

- Vrata so odprta. The door is open.
- Tla so umazana. The floor is dirty.

Let me tell you something

When you want to express a mild obligation, command or a wish you use the word naj, which you simply place in front of the verb in the present tense. In English you do this with words like ‘may, let, should’. Here are a few examples using the word naj:

- Kaj naj ti povem? What shall I tell you?
- Ali ga naj pokličem? Shall I call him?
Ne, naj te on pokliče. No, let him call you.
Naj se smej! Let him smile!

This is called optative. When it expresses an obligation it is translated with 'should', or 'shall'. Note how Matej asks Robert in the dialogue All naj pokličem Sabino? (Shall I call Sabina?)

Exercise 1

Here are a few comments on the dialogue Ta soba je premajhna (They are wrong). Can you correct and rewrite them?
1 Soba v hotelu je za Roberta prevelika.
2 Matej je včeraj popoldne sejal Sabino.
3 V Sloveniji je poleti za Roberta premrzo.
4 Sabina sestrična oddaja sobe.
5 Robert je takoj našel plan mesta.

Exercise 2

Tell your friend that:
1 your car is too old for the road;
2 your flat is too cold in the winter;
3 espresso coffee is too strong for you;
4 you never drive too fast;
5 that restaurant was too expensive.

Exercise 3 🟡

A colleague of yours has mentioned to you how he is about to move. Ask him few questions about it:

zavdati to envy

1 YOU: Did you buy a house or a flat?
HE: Kupim sem dvosobno stanovanje.
2 YOU: Was it expensive?
HE: Ne, več kot sem kredit.
3 YOU: I'm sure you have a lot of work to do now.
HE: Ne vprašaj! Delam noč in dan.
4 YOU: When are you moving?
HE: O, ne vem še. Sedaj moram kupiti pohištvo in še sto drugih stvari.

5 YOU: Hm... I don't envy you.

Exercise 4

Choose the correct word in brackets in the summary of Robert's getting a flat:
1 Robert je končno dobil (sobo, stanovanje, hišo).
2 Zelo pogreša (omaro, pislno mizo, sesalec).
3 Sabina (sestrina, sestra, teta) oddaja stanovanja.
4 Sestrično ima na (razpoloži, ogledu, izbiro) eno garsonjero in eno trosobno stanovanje.
5 Stanovanje je nad (trgovino, pekamo, gostilno).

Exercise 5

Križanka

1 kitchen
2 shelves
3 vacuum cleaner
4 cooker
5 table
6 chair
7 bedroom
8 furniture
9 couch
10 fridge

Dialogue 2 🟡

Stanovanje je kar lepo opremljeno

The flat is quite nicely furnished

Matej has arranged to meet Sabina that same evening and she took him round to see the flat. He thinks it might suit Robert very well and he telephones him back the following day to tell him what he thinks of it.

**Language points**

**Future tense**

The future tense in Slovene is formed with the future tense of the verb ‘to be’ and the participle ending in t, that is the same participle that is used to form the past tense. The verb ‘to be’ in the future tense is conjugated as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bom</td>
<td>bova</td>
<td>bomo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boš</td>
<td>bosta</td>
<td>boste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bo</td>
<td>bosta</td>
<td>bodo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As to how to form the participle ending in t, refer back to lesson 7, where you also learned a few irregular ones. Here is an additional list of the verbs which form their participle in a slightly irregular way:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>1st person singular</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>najti</td>
<td>najdem</td>
<td>sem našel/-šla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>odpreti</td>
<td>odprem</td>
<td>sem odprl/-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zapreti</td>
<td>zaprem</td>
<td>sem zaprl/-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nesti</td>
<td>nesem</td>
<td>sem nesel/-sla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prevesti</td>
<td>prevedem</td>
<td>sem prevedel/-dla</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you want to use ‘to be’ in the future tense you don’t say bom bil but only bom which means ‘I will be’. Note how Robert asks in the dialogue Ali bojutri zvečer kdo tam? Matej asks him Ali boš okoli šestih v hotelu? But Matej says Jaz bom prišel v hotel. Apart from ‘to be’, verbs in the future tense are conjugated as stated above. Let's conjugate the verb priti (to come) in the future tense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(jaz) bom prišel</td>
<td>(midva) bova prišla</td>
<td>(mi) bomo prišli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ti) boš prišel</td>
<td>(vidva) bosta prišla</td>
<td>(vi) boste prišli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(on) bo prišel</td>
<td>(onadv) bosta prišla</td>
<td>(oni) bodo prišli</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Word order

When you use the personal pronouns the word order in the future tense is usually as follows: personal pronoun, future tense of 'to be', participle, as in:

Jaz bom delal. I will work.

When you don't use the personal pronouns the reverse of the above occurs as in:

Delal bom. I will work.

Are you going to keep this in mind?

There is only one future tense in Slovene, always formed in the same way. In English you can express a future action with the verb 'to go' as in 'She is going to work tomorrow'. This construction does not exist in Slovene.

There is no future perfect tense in Slovene. A sentence like 'I will have learned this by tomorrow' is expressed with the only future tense which exists in Slovene: To se bom naučil do jutri.

You may find this odd because by tomorrow this action will have been in the past, but that's the way it is!

On one's own or together

The word sam/-a means 'alone', 'by oneself', for example:

Danes sem sama doma. I'm at home on my own today.

Po navadi grem sam v kino. I usually go to the cinema on my own.

The word skupaj means 'together', for example:

Skupaj v krohu. We (two) went to the cinema together.

Notice how Matej suggests to Robert Če hočeš, lahko greva skupaj pogledat to stanovanje.

Yes, quite

The word kar means 'quite', 'just', for example:

Kar povej ji! Just tell her!

Kako si? Kar dobro. How are you? Quite well.

Kar is also a conjunction word which you will meet later on.

Supine

The supine, like the infinitive, is a verbal form which does not indicate a person. The supine differs from the infinitive in that it doesn't have the final i, for example gledat, govorit, pisat.

The supine is used after verbs of motion, such as 'to go', 'to come', 'to drive', etc., for example:

Grem kupit par stvari. I'm going to buy a few things.

Pridi me obiskat. Come to visit me.

Note how Matej suggests to Robert:

Najhodite, če ga prideš sam pogledat.
Če hočeš, se lahko peldjev skupaj pogledat to stanovanje.

(The verb and the supine are in italics in the sentences above.)

Exercise 6

Suppose you did the things below yesterday. How would you say them if you were going to do them tomorrow?

1. Kupil sem si tri knjige.
2. Ob desetih odpoldne sem šel v kavarno.
3. Ves popoldan sem se učil slovenčino.
4. V mesto sem se peljal z avtobusom.
5. Od sedmih do osmih zjutraj sem igral tenis.

Exercise 7

Davor is a student and is looking for a room. A friend of his tells him that there will soon be a room available in a flat where he lives. Can you put into Slovene the conversation they have had?

Davor: Where is the flat?
Sergej: Near the centre. Do you want to come to have a look at it?
Davor: Are you free this evening? Can I come to see you?
Sergej: Yes, if you want we can meet in the centre.
Davor: Yes, where?
Exercise 8

Are these statements about you true or false?

1. Stanujem v bloku. T F
2. Imam dvosobno stanovanje. T F
3. Moje stanovanje je v centru mesta. T F
4. Živim sam. T F
5. Nimam kuhinje. T F

Rewrite the ones which are false.

Exercise 9

Suppose this is a weather forecast for tomorrow. Can you fill in the missing words in Slovene, given in the box below, as indicated in brackets in English? Use each word once only.

Vremenska napoved za jutri

V četrtek, sonce, okoli, bo, deževalo, popoldne, Temperature, dopoldne, od, do.

Jutri (I will) po vsej Sloveniji (2 rain).
Temperature bodo (3 from) 18 (4 to) 21 stopinj celzija.
(5 On Thursday) bo delno jasno, (6 in the afternoon) bodo ponekod še manjše padavine.
(7 The temperature) bodo (8 about) 22 stopinj celzija.
(9 In the morning) bo pihal še veter ampak popoldne se bo pokazalo (10 the sun).

Exercise 10

Find out if the people below will go to the places indicated at the time given. The first sentence has been done for you.

1. Robert / to see the flat / tomorrow
   Ali bo Robert jutri šel pogledat stanovanje?
2. Davor / on holiday / next year
   3. Sabina / to the theatre / tomorrow night
   4. Sergej / to the cinema / tonight
   5. Davor / to the doctor's / tomorrow morning
   6. Barbara and Tomaž / to Spain / in September

Dialogue 3

Končno se selim!

I'm finally moving!

Robert and Matej have gone to the flat and had a look at it. Apart from a few things which will have to be arranged, Robert is quite pleased about it. He takes Matej, who has a few suggestions, for a drink.

Robert: Na zdravje!
Matej: Na zdravje! Na tvoje novo stanovanje!
Robert: Hvala ti, Matej! To stanovanje ni samo lepo, ampak tudi poceni! In lepo diši, po kruhu.
Matej: Ja, povedal sem ti, spodaj je peckarna. Vsako jutro boš lahko imel svež zajtrk.
Robert: Ja, ne bo mi treba skrbeti, da se bom zredi! Vsak dan bom hodič gori in dol po teh stopnicah. Škoda, da ni dvigala. In nekaj stvari bom moral kupiti.
Robert: Ravnio razmišljam, če se mi izplača kupiti vse, kar potrebujem. Ali je pohitstvo drago ali poceni?
Matej: Odvisno, kaj kupiš?

Robert: Cheers!
Matej: Cheers! To your new flat!
Robert: Thank you, Matej. This flat isn't only nice but is also cheap. And it smells nicely, of bread.
Matej: Yes, I told you, there is a bakery below. You'll be able to have a fresh breakfast every morning.
Robert: Yes, I won't need to worry that I am putting on weight. I'll be walking up and down these stairs every day. It's a
pity there isn't an escalator there. And I'll have to buy a few things.

MATEJ: It is best if you move in first and think about everything a little. My parents have my old desk in the attic. You can borrow it. And I'm sure that Sabina's aunt will lend you something if you want.

ROBERT: I'm just wondering whether it's worth buying everything I need. Is furniture expensive or cheap?

MATEJ: It depends what you buy.

Vocabulary

Language points

Up and down

You have learned that Slovene has two words for 'here' and 'there' depending whether the verb implies movement or not. The same applies to a few other words, like 'up' and 'down'. Notice how Robert says in the dialogue: Vsak dan bom hodil gor in dol po stopnicah. He will go gor but he will he gori. He will go dol but he will be doli. Look at some more examples:

Pridi sem!
Tukaj sem!
Ali greš danes ven?
Ne, včeraj sem bil ves večer zunaj.
Pridi dol!
Vsi smo doli.

Here are the words which are expressed with the same word in English but require different words in Slovene, depending on whether you go somewhere or whether you are somewhere.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>You go</th>
<th>You are</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sem</td>
<td>tušaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tja</td>
<td>tam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domov</td>
<td>doma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gor</td>
<td>gori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dol</td>
<td>doli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ven</td>
<td>zunaj</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How much does it cost?

When asking this question you must put the verb into the third person singular when referring to one thing, as in:

Koliko stane ta knjiga? How much does this book cost?

or into the third person plural when referring to more than two things, for example:

Koliko stanejo jaholka? How much do apples cost?

You can also ask for the price (cena) as Robert did in the dialogue:

Kakšna je cena? What's the price?

You may see notices in the shops:

posebna ponudba special offer
ugodno bargain
znižano reduced
razprodaja sale

Good/better/the best

You will learn how to form comparisons in lesson 13. As in English, the comparison for 'good' is irregular. It is as follows:

dober bolši najbolši
dobra bolša najbolša
dobro bolše (bolje) najbolše (najbolje)

Notice how Matej says to Robert:
Najbolje je, če ga (stanovanje) prideš sam pogledat.
It's best if you come to have a look at it yourself.

Robert asks Matej:
Če je bolje zate, se lahko dobiva kje v centru?
If it's better for you we can meet somewhere in the centre?

Not only ... but also...
When you want to say that something is 'not only ... but also ...' you use the words ne samo ... ampak tudi ... Notice how Robert said in the dialogue:
Stanovanje ni samo lepo, ampak tudi poceni!

It smells nice/bad
There are two distinct verbs in Slovene describing a nice and a bad smell:

dišati smells nice
smršeti smells bad

Here are a few examples of how they are used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>smeti</th>
<th>rubbish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tukaj nekaj smrš.</td>
<td>Something smells here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smeti smršilo.</td>
<td>The rubbish smells.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaj kuhas? Lepo diši.</td>
<td>What are you cooking? It smells nice.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To lend/borrow
The verbs 'to lend' (posoditi) and 'to borrow' (izposoditi) are used in Slovene as in the following examples:

Ali mi lahko posoditi to knjigo? Can you lend me this book?
Ne, ni moja. Marko mi jo je posodil. No, it isn't mine. Marko lent it to me.
Ampak lahko si jo izposodiš v knjižnici. But you can borrow it from the library.

One has to know these things
As in English, you can express an action which can be done by anyone. In English you use the impersonal 'one', or 'you' to express this. In Slovene you use the second person singular, for example:

Vseposvod moraš biti previden. You must be careful everywhere.

Nikoli ne veš. You never know!

You can also express things like this with the third person singular but you have to insert the word človek (men), for example:
Človek mura biti vseposvod One (lit. 'man') must be careful everywhere.
Človek nikoli ne ve. One (lit. 'man') never knows.

Slovene verbs
In this lesson you have come across seliti se (to move). By adding prefixes this verb has different meanings, for example:
seliti se to move
preseleiti se to move somewhere else
odseliti se to move away

The noun odselejenci (emigrants) comes from this.

preselejenci to move somewhere

The noun priseljenci (immigrants) comes from this.

vseliti se to move in
izseliti se to move out

This happens with almost all Slovene verbs. Since in English only one verb exists for them all it is difficult to translate them. Let us take another example: pisati (to write).

vpisati se to enrol
Ali si se že vpis? Have you enrolled yet?
podpisati to sign
Podpišite tukaj, prosim! Sign here, please!

pisati to write
Prepiši mojo domačo nalogo! Copy my homework!
Danes sem napisal 200 strani. Today I wrote 200 pages.

I must add something. I didn't have the time, that is why I didn't write back for such a long time.

Is there such a construction in Slovene? No.

Exercise II
Connect the following sentences with the conjunction given in brackets.

1. We can meet in a café. Is this better for you? (if)
2. The flat was big. It wasn’t furnished. (but)
3. Robert has all his books and papers on the floor. The room in the hotel is too small for him. (because)

By adding prefixes to some verbs it will change the meaning, sometimes considerably and sometimes marginally. You must not think that you don’t know the word when you come across it with its different prefixes. For the time being it is best if you look at the root of the verb, which you will recognize and which should give you an idea of what the verb could mean. As you have seen in the examples above, the verb has something to do with writing.

CASSETTES ORDER FORM
Please supply one/two/ three cassette(s) of
Colloquial Slovene, Albretti.
ISBN 0-415-08947-6

Price £15.99* incl. VAT
$22.95*

☐ I enclose payment with order.
☐ Please debit my Access/Mastercharge/Mastercard/Visa/American Express. Account number:

Name
Address

Expiry date ____________________________

* The publishers reserve the right to change prices without notice.
4 I told her. I didn’t have the time. (that)
5 Come with us to the cinema. Do you have the time? (if)

Exercise 12

What answers on the right would be possible for the questions on the left?

1 Srečno pot!
2 Kaj te hiši?
3 Ali igraš klavir?
4 Kam gres?
5 Ali je bil film zanimiv?
6 Ali si prvič tukaj?
7 Kakšno je danes vreme?
8 Ali je to tvoj brat?

(a) Ne, zelo nezanimiv je bil.
(b) Dežuje, in mrzlo je.
(c) Ne, to je moj hratanec.
(d) Glava in grlo.
(e) Hvala.
(f) Ne, kitaro.
(g) V mesto.
(h) Ne, drugič.

Exercise 13

Can you remember the Slovene for the words in italics? Test yourself!

1 You go for a drink with a friend where a sign in the bar says No smoking.
2 You are just about to park your car when you notice the sign No parking.
3 You are in a theatre and the performance is about to begin but your friend is still telling you something. Say to him Stop talking.
4 You think you are going to the lavatory in a restaurant when you see a sign No entry.
5 You are going away for some time and people say to you Have a good trip and a pleasant holiday.

Exercise 14

Complete these sentences with the following words: predraga, predaleč, premrzo, prevroče, prehito.

1 Njegov stric zmeraj vozi...
2 Ne moreš it pes,... je.
3 Stanovanje mi je vseč ampak najemnina je...
4 Danes ne grem ven... je.
5 Boste imam zimo, poleti je zame...
Exercise 15

*Pronunciation exercise.* The letter v has different sounds in Slovene. When v is placed before a vowel or before the consonants l and r it is pronounced v as in 'villa'. Let's pronounce the following words:

- veliko stanovanje
- veler
- človek nikoli ne ve
- slabo vreme
- ne vem
- videl sem vas

When v is at the end of a word, when it stands after a vowel and when it stands before consonants (apart from l and r) v is pronounced like the English 'w' as in 'how':

- Ali je bilo to vprašanje težko?
- Rjav avto
- To vsak ve!
- Na zdravje!

Dialogue for comprehension

Robert is very excited about having found a flat and he telephones a Slovenian friend, Špela, living in England to tell her about it. What does she say he will have to do when she next comes to visit?

**Robert:** Mimogrede, baje vedno lepo diši, po kruhu. Spodaj je pekarna.
**Špela:** Torej ko pridem naslednjič, mi boš pripravil sveži zajterk.
**Robert:** Seveda!
9 Treba je napolniti hladilnik!
The fridge needs filling!

In this lesson you will learn about:
- How to use the genitive case
- Where and how to buy some food
- The way the Slovene words for 'to know' are used
- How to fill in a form
- More ways of expressing an obligation in a positive or in a negative way

Dialogue 1 ✡

Na tej glavni cesti je kar precej majhnih trgovin
There are quite a few small shops on this main road

Robert has moved into his flat and has met his neighbours Boštjan, Sergej, and Davor, who are medical students sharing a flat next door to him. He meets Sergej just outside the block of flats one morning, who tells him where things in the area are.

Sergej: Dobro jutro, zgodnji si. Ali si se že zvivel?

Sergej: Ja, na tej glavni cesti je kar precej majhnih trgovin in velika samopostrežna ima približno 200 metrov na ravnost in prva ulica na levo. Tam imajo dobro izbiro. Ni ti treba iti peš. Avtobusna postaja je pred trgovino.

Robert: Raje grem peš.
Sergej: In mesnica je tukaj za volalnik. Robert, o, ne, ne bom me potreboval. Vegetarjanec sem.
Sergej: Moral boš iti na tržnico.
Robert: Ali je kje blizu?
Sergej: Ja, ... o, moj avtobus prihaja. Ali se hočeš oglasiti zvečer? Mislim, da bomo vendar vsi doma.

Vocabulary
- biti zgoden: to be early
- vživet se v: to get used to
- prostor: space
- ravnikar: just
- napolniti: to fill up
- glavna cesta: main road
- to be early
- to get used to space
- just
- to fill up
- main road
- supermarket
- choice
- there is no need to
- butcher's shop
- it doesn't matter
- market
Language points

It is necessary to...

In lesson 4 you learnt that morati (must) is followed by the infinitive. Notice how Robert says Moram napolniti hladinik.

An obligation is usually expressed with the verb morati in Slovene. In English you can express an obligation with other verbs like 'to have to, ought to, to be obliged to', which means that the same idea can be translated into English in different ways.

You have also learned that morati has no negative form and that you use moči (e.g. nisem mogel) to express an obligation in the negative sense.

You can express an obligation in a positive or in a negative sense with treba je or ni treba. This is an impersonal expression and it is used with the dative case and the infinitive, for example:

Ali ti je treba ...? Do you have to ...?
Ni mi treba ... I don't have to ...
Ni ti treba ... You don't have to ...

Notice how Sergej says to Robert in the dialogue Ni ti treba iti peč (You don't have to walk).

More uses of the infinitive

In lesson 4 you learnt that the verbs mprati, zmati, smeti, moči, hoteti, šeleći or končati, nehati) are also followed by an infinitive; for example:

Začnimo jesi! Let's start eating.
Nehal sem kaditi. I stopped smoking.

There are phrases after which the infinitive is used. Here are a few:

biti primoran to be obliged/forced to
biti sposoben to be capable
imeti navado to have the habit

You can use the infinitive where you would use a gerund in English as in:

sedeti to sit

Kaditi (je) prepovedano. Smoking prohibited.
Poleti je prijetno sedeti zunaj. In the summer sitting outside is pleasant.

Whilst you can use an infinitive in certain expressions in English you cannot in Slovene. Instead you have to use a relative clause. Look at the following examples:

Obljubil sem, da vas bom peljal na večerjo. I promised to take you to have supper.

I don't mind

When you want to say that something doesn't matter, or that you don't mind, you use the expression hiti vseeno with the personal pronoun in the dative case, for example:

Meni je vseeno. I don't mind.
Njemu ni vseeno. He does mind.

Notice how Sergej says to Robert Vseeno je, meaning 'It doesn't matter'.

Ring the bell or knock on the door

Zvoniti means 'to ring' and trkati means 'to knock'. However, when you tell someone to ring the bell or to knock on the door you use these verbs with the prefix po, i.e. pozvoniti and potrkati. Notice how Sergej says to Robert:

Kar pozvoniti! Just ring the bell!

He could have said:

Potrkač na vrata! Knock on the door!

Shopping for food

The word for 'a shop' is trgovina. You may want to go to a butcher (mesnica), bakery (pekarna), delicatessen (delikatesa), fruit and vegetable market (tržnica).
Plural of nouns

You know that Slovene nouns are masculine, feminine or neuter in gender and that they can appear in singular, dual or plural form. Let us take a look at how the plural of nouns is formed.

Feminine nouns ending in a change their ending to e in the plural form, for example:

- hiša → hiša
- prijateljica → prijateljice
- nedelja → nedelje

Masculine nouns ending in a consonant usually take an i ending but there are exceptions, for example:

- otrok → otroci
- prijatelj → prijatelji

Neuter nouns ending in o or e take an a ending, for example:

- mesto → mesta
- dekle → dekleta

To listen to/to hear

In English you use the verb ‘to listen’ with the preposition ‘to’ as in ‘I’m listening to the radio’. In Slovene there is no preposition after poslušati (to listen), and you say Poslušam radio.

Here are a few more examples:

| poročila | news |

- Kaj poslušaš? What are you listening to?
- Poslušam poročila. I’m listening to the news.
- Poslušaj me! Listen to me!
- Jaz nikoli ne poslušam radio. I never listen to the radio.

When you want to say that you have heard something you use slišati.

- Ali si slišal, kaj je rekla Eva? Did you hear what Eva said?
- Ne, nisem slišal. Nisem poslušal. No, I didn’t hear. I didn’t listen.

Exercise 1

You are sharing a flat with a few people and things are never where they should be. Ask your flatmate if he has put the things below in the places indicated, using the verb provided. The first example has been done for you:

1. odnesi / knjige / dnevna soba
   Ali si odnesel knjige v dnevni sobo?
   2. zapeljati / avto / garaža
   3. dati / mlčko / kuhinja
   4. odnesi / dežnik / kopalnica
   5. dati / časopis / miza
   6. postaviti / roža / vaza

Exercise 2

Your flatmate told you that all the things you asked in exercise 1 have been done. What did he say to you? The first example has been done for you:

1. Knjige so v dnevni sobi.

Exercise 3

Davor and Sergej are planning to take a trip to Morocco (Maroko) during their summer holiday and are arranging things. As Davor gets home one afternoon he tells Sergej what he has found out. Can you put into Slovene what they were saying?

Sergej: Have you been to the travel agency?
Davor: Yes, I have. I asked how much the plane ticket costs.
Sergej: Is it cheap or expensive?
Davor: Very expensive. I think it is too expensive.
Sergej: Don’t they have any charter flights?
Davor: Not in the summer.

Exercise 4

Ask your friend whether he has to do the following things. Use the expression treba je. The first example has been done for you:
1 buy all these books
   Ali ti je treba kupiti vse te knjige?
2 smoke
3 reserve the ticket a month in advance
4 go to the cinema twice a week
5 work every evening
6 listen to the music all day

Exercise 5

Your friend answers that he doesn’t need to do the things you were asking him about but he likes to do them. What did he say? The first example has been done for you
1 Ne, ni mi treba kupiti vse te knjige, ampak jaz rad kupujem knjige.

Dialogue 2

Ali znaš voziti po desni strani ceste?

Can you drive on the right side of the road?

Robert has decided to hire a car to help him move and do the shopping. As he gets to the Rent-a-Car office he sees Davor, one of his neighbours. Neither of them knows what the other is doing there but they tell each other

DAVOR: Robert, živio, ali me ne poznaš?
ROBERT: O, živio Davor, nisem te vedel.
DAVOR: Ali si izposojaš avto?
ROBERT: Ja, izposodil si bom enega za en mesec. Ali ti delaš tukaj?
ROBERT: Lepo in pametno. Tudi jaz sem delal, ko sem bil student.
DAVOR: Kaj si delal?

Vocabulary

izposoditi si to borrow
gneča a crowd of people
zraven on the side, alongside
zaslužiti to earn
popraviti to repair
nekaj some

Language points

Davor at the counter in the Rent-a-Car office gives Robert the following form to fill in:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Priimek</th>
<th>Surname</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ime</td>
<td>Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spol (moški, ženski)</td>
<td>Sex (m., f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Državljanstvo</td>
<td>Nationality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rojstni datum</td>
<td>Date of birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rojstni kraj</td>
<td>Place of birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stalno prebivališče</td>
<td>Permanent address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Podpis</td>
<td>Signature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datum</td>
<td>Date</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Should you do anything official in Slovenia you will probably be asked to fill in such a form or one very similar. It is called formular, obrazec, prijavnica.

**Vedeti/znati/poznati**

You have come across these verbs: vedeti, znati and poznati. They are all translated as 'to know' in English, yet in Slovene they all have a different meaning. Look at the following examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Poznati means 'to know something or somebody':</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ali poznaš Ljubljano?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert ne pozna Sabine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vedeti means that you know something:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ali veš, koliko je ura?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ne, ne vem.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Znati means 'to know how to do something', as in:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ali znaš voziti po desni strani?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ne, ne znam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ali znaš igrati tenis?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**More about the Slovene verbs**

Most Slovene verbs appear in two forms. One expresses an action which is limited, for example *prodati* (to sell). These are perfective verbs. Others express an action which is or was in progress, for example, *prodajati*. These are imperfective. Both *prodati* and *prodajati* are translated into English as 'to sell'. There is, however, a difference in meaning in Slovene. Notice how Robert tells Davor in the dialogue *prodajal sem kolesa*. This gives a sense of a continuing process, which is expressed with an imperfective verb. Robert could have said *Vsak dan sem prodal eno kolo* (Every day I sold one bicycle). This would give a sense of an action which was finished, and such an action is expressed with a perfective verb in Slovene. Here are a few examples of how perfective and imperfective verbs are used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfective verbs</th>
<th>Imperfective verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prodati</td>
<td>prodajati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kupiti</td>
<td>kupovati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posoditi</td>
<td>pošiljati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>izposoditi si</td>
<td>izposojati si</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostati</td>
<td>ostajati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plačati</td>
<td>plačevati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dobiti</td>
<td>dobivati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urediti</td>
<td>uredjati</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What are you buying?</th>
<th>I bought a car.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jane is sending me the news from England.</td>
<td>Jane sent me a packet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the dialogue you came across the verbs *izposoditi si* and *popraviti* in their imperfective form. Here are some more examples of verbs which exist in two forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfective verbs (expressing an action which has been completed)</th>
<th>Imperfective verbs (expressing an action in progress)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prodati</td>
<td>prodajati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kupiti</td>
<td>kupovati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posoditi</td>
<td>pošiljati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>izposoditi si</td>
<td>izposojati si</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostati</td>
<td>ostajati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plačati</td>
<td>plačevati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dobiti</td>
<td>dobivati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urediti</td>
<td>uredjati</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Which do you prefer or like most?**

In lesson 5 you learnt how to express what you like (*imeni plus *rada*) and what you like doing (*rado plus the verb in the form of the person you are referring to*). If you want to say that you like something or like doing something very much you put the adverb *zezo* (very) in front of *rado*, for example:

**On se zelo rad vozi s kolezo.** He likes riding his bicycle very much.

**Jaz imam zelo rad redece vino.** I like red wine very much.

When you want to say that you prefer something you say *imeniti* *nuje* or *rasi*, as in:
Kaj imaš raje, kavo ali čaj?
Which do you prefer, coffee or tea?

To say that you like something most you put naj in front of raje or rajši, as in:

Najraje imam čaj z limono.
I like tea with lemon most.

Najraje igram kitaro.
I like playing the guitar most.

Raje, rajši, najraje and najrajiši are adverbs and never change.

You have learned that to say that you like something you can use the expression všoč mi je, which takes a personal pronoun in the dative case. Another expression for liking something is ugaša mi, ti, which, again, you use with the personal pronoun in the dative case. Here are a few examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>glasba</th>
<th>music</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>klasična glasba</td>
<td>classical music</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ali ti ugaja ta glasba?
Do you like this music?

Ne, žal mi je, ne ugaja mi.
No, I'm sorry, I don't like it.

Meni ugaja klasična glasba.
I like classical music.

The Slovene school system

Slovenes go to primary school (osnovna šola) at the age of six or seven, which is compulsory and lasts eight years. This primary school is sometimes called osemletka (the eight-years school). If you have completed primary school with good results you are able to go to the secondary school (srednja šola), usually for four years. These vary: some are oriented towards particular professions (like nursing, technology) and others are in the main preparation for universities. If you weren't quite as successful in your primary school you can go to a school which will train you for a particular job, like motor mechanics or hairdressing. The training normally lasts three years and the colleges are called poklicna šola (technical college).

Public education is free; in secondary schools and at universities you can get a grant (stipendija).

When you are in primary school you are in a razred (form). You will hear people say:

Metka je v petem/šestem razredu.
Metka is in the fifth/sixth form.

Above primary school you are in a letnik (year), for example:

V katerem letniku je Davor? Ne vem, mislim, da je v drugem.
In which year is Davor? I don't know. I think in the second.

What do you study?

You can ask somebody Kaj študiraš/študirate? and they will tell you the subject they study, which will be in the accusative case because it answers the question 'what?'. Here are a few subjects you can study:

- zgodovina  history
- prvn  law
- diplomar  'to take one's degree'.

You will recognize the names of the other major subjects. Note, however, how they are spelt in Slovene: geografija, medicina, slovenščina, angleščina, ekonomija, matematika, fizika, biologija, kemija.

Diploma means 'degree' in Slovene. You may hear students say:

Kdaj si/boš diplomiral? When did you/will you take your degree?

Diplomirani means 'to take one's degree'.

Exercise 6

Fill in the Slovene verbs for 'to know' in the correct person and tense in the sentences below:

1. Ali ..., koliko je ura?
2. Ali ... Simono? Ne, ne ... je.
3. Ali ... igri vijolino? Ne, ampak ... igri klavir.
5. (Jaz) ... , da nič ne ... (Sokrat).

Exercise 7

Choose the correct alternative from the words in italics:

1. Ne morem se odločiti/dolžati.
2. Ali si že prodal/prodajal hišo?
Exercise 8

What do the people below study? Make up similar sentences to the example which has been done for you:

Sergej/medicine
Sergej študira medicino.
1 Sabina/economy
2 Tanja/law
3 Milena/history
4 Ana/mathematics
5 Janez/biology

Exercise 9

You check into a hotel in Slovenia and you are given this form to fill in:

1 Priimek: ...................................................
2 Ima: ...................................................
3 Spol (moški, ženski): ...................................
4 Državljanstvo: ..........................................
5 Rojstni datum: ...........................................
6 Rojstni kraj: ............................................
7 Stalno prebivališče: ...................................
8 Podpis: ..................................................
9 Datum: ..................................................

Exercise 10

Choose the correct answer referring to the dialogues in this lesson:

1 Robert je zjutraj šel v
   (a) mesnico
   (b) pekarno
   (c) trgovino

2 Robert mora
   (a) kupiti radio
   (b) iti v mesnico

(c) napolniti hladilnik

3 Kdo dela v Rent-a-Car pisarni?
   (a) Davor
   (b) Boštjan
   (c) Sergej

4 Kaj je delal Robert, ko je bil študent?
   (a) prodajal avtomobile
   (b) prodajal kolesa
   (c) popravljal avtomobile

5 Za kako dolgo si bo Robert izposodil avto?
   (a) Za en mesec.
   (b) Za dva meseca.
   (c) Za tri meseca.

Dialogue 3

Ali sem jaz na vrsti?

Is it my turn?

Now that he has a car, Robert stops at his local fruit and vegetable market and buys a few things
Language points

Buying things

Bread, meat, fruit and vegetables are sold by the kilo in Slovenia. Liquid items such as milk or drinks are sold by the litre. At delicatessen counters sausages, cheese and salami are sold by grams or dekagrams.

Robert had a list of basic items he had to get at the shop:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>Shopping list</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kruh</td>
<td>bread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mleko</td>
<td>milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>čaj</td>
<td>tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kava</td>
<td>coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sir</td>
<td>cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jajca</td>
<td>eggs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salama</td>
<td>salami</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Whose turn is it?

The word vrsta means 'line', 'queue'. You ask Kdo je na vrsti? meaning 'Whose turn is it?' You may get the answers:

Oprostite, sedaj niste vi na vrsti. Excuse me, it isn't your turn.
Ona je na vrsti. It is her turn.

Notice how Robert asks at the counter Ali sem jaz na vrsti?

The genitive case

You have come across expressions in which the genitive case was used. In Slovene the genitive case is used for the direct object of all negative verbs (e.g. nimam časa). It is used when in English you'd use the preposition 'of' (e.g. v centre mesta), which goes for all expressions of quantity. It is also used as the object of certain prepositions. This means that in all the above cases the nouns and the adjectives will take the following endings.

First declension

Feminine nouns ending in a will change their ending to e, for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>branjevka</td>
<td>greengrocer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postrič</td>
<td>to serve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sveže sadje</td>
<td>fresh fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zelenjava</td>
<td>vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>krompir</td>
<td>potatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paradžik</td>
<td>tomato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jabolkno</td>
<td>apple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hruska</td>
<td>pear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>za enkrat</td>
<td>for now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biti na vrsti</td>
<td>one's turn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sir</td>
<td>cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jogurt</td>
<td>yoghurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blagajna</td>
<td>till</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dkg</td>
<td>decagramme</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ze dolgo nisem videl moje prijateljice Sabine.
I haven’t seen my friend Sabine for a long time.

Second declension
Feminine nouns ending in a consonant will take an i ending, for example:

Veselim se pomladi. I’m looking forward to spring.

Third declension
Masculine nouns will usually take an a ending, for example:

2 kg krompirja 2 kilos of potatoes

Fourth declension
Neuter nouns ending in o or e will take an a ending, for example:

Nismo imeli lepega vremena. We didn’t have nice weather.
2 litra mleka. 2 litres of milk.

Personal pronouns in the genitive case are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mene (me)</td>
<td>naju</td>
<td>nas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tebe (te)</td>
<td>vaju</td>
<td>vas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>njega (ga)</td>
<td>nju</td>
<td>njih</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nje (je)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>njega (ga)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With the exception of ‘her’, personal pronouns in the genitive case are the same as personal pronouns in the accusative case.

Ali si jo videl? Have you seen her?
Ne, nisem jo videl. No, I haven’t seen her.

The prepositions used with the genitive case are:

od       from, of, since
do       to, until, up to, as far as brez  without
iz        from, out of

Some prepositions are compounds:
izza from behind
iznad from above
izmed among, out of
izpred from before
izpod from below

At what time?

In lesson 3 you learnt the cardinal and the ordinal numbers and a few basic expressions for how to tell the time. Look at the following times:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>half</th>
<th>quarter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pol</td>
<td></td>
<td>četrt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tri</td>
<td>četrt</td>
<td>quarter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ura je štiri.
It is four o’clock.

Ura je pol dveh.
It is half past one.
(notice that you say ‘half two’ meaning ‘half to two’)

Ura je četrt na eno.
It is quarter past twelve.
(notice that you say it is ‘quarter onto one’ meaning ‘quarter past twelve’)

Ura je tri četrt na tri
It is quarter to three.
(notice that you say “it is three quarters onto three” meaning ‘quarter to three’)

...
With od (from), do (until), ob (at), po (after), pol (half) the genitive or the locative endings of the numbers are used. The endings for the numbers from 1 to 12 are the same in the genitive and in the locative case: enih, dveh, treh, štiri, petih, šestih, sedmih, osemih, devetih, desetih, enajstih, dvanajstih.

When you use na (onto), as in četrtna eno (quarter past twelve) the only number which has a different ending is 'one', and you say: 

Ura je četrtri četrt na eno, dve, tri ... 

The prepositions med (between) and pred (before) take the accusative case, and you say:

Pridi med eno in drugo.  
tretjo in štirto.  
peto in šesto.  
sedmo in osem.  

Come between one and two.  
three and four.  
five and six.  
seven and eight.  

Ne pridi pred deveto.  
deseto.  
enajstvo.  
dvanaajstvo.  

Don’t come before nine.  
ten.  
eleven.  
twelve.  

Note that with prepositions med and pred you use ordinal numbers.

Exercise 11

Koliko je ura?

1  
2  
3  
4  

5

Exercise 12

Imagine you are in Slovenia for a week living in a self-catering apartment where you have to do your own shopping. Can you match the Slovene and the English words for the food items below which may be on your shopping list?

kava milk
krnah cheese
čaj potatoes
mleko eggs
jajca tea
krompir coffee
sir bread

Exercise 13

You are doing some shopping in a big supermarket where you can get everything. How would you ask for the following items?

1 1 kg bread
2 2 litres of milk
3 1 yoghurt
4 10 dkg cheese
5 ½kg apples

Exercise 14

Here are a few adjectives. What words could they describe?

1 težki/-zka/-o
2 lep/-a/-o
3 dober/-bra/-o
4 pezanimiv/-a/-o
5 smajhen/-hna/-o
Exercise 15

Pronunciation exercise. The Slovene h always pronounced, as in English 'hello'. Here are a few more words where the letter h is present: hvala, hčerka, zahvali se, hladilnik, hlače, hrana, hoteti, kuhati, kuhinja, kruh.

Dialogue for comprehension

That morning Robert promised Sergej that he would call by in the evening but Matej telephoned him in the afternoon and asked him if he would like to have supper with him and the Korens, who own the flat he is staying in. He still rings the students' door bell and tells the boys about it. Sergej, who answers the door, suggests that they could all go out to where they usually go on Friday evenings. What do they arrange to do on Friday?

Sergej: Dober večer, naprej!
Robert: Ja, Matej je omenil, da je študentka. Baje je že tri leta v prvem letniku. Ampak to je vsenko! Hotel sem vas vprašal, če želite iti v petek večer ven jest. Jaz vas povabim!
Sergej: Ja, ampak ob petkih gremo mi po navadi v eno kavarno, kjer igrajo jazz. Če želiš, lahko prideš tudi ti.
Robert: Ja, najprej lahko gremo nekaj pojest.
Sergej: Vztopi za 5 minut! Vprašajva Boštjana in Davorja.
Robert: Res ne morem. Pozem sem že!

10 Obljubil sem, da vas bom povabil na večerjo
I promised to take you out for supper

In this lesson you will learn about:
- Words for food and drinks
- How to order a meal
- How to use the conditional
- Some adjectives describing food
- How to complain if something is not to your taste

Dialogue 1

Ali si že jedel?
Have you eaten yet?

As Robert promised, he is taking his three neighbours out for a meal. He rings their bell to arrange when and where they will go.

Boštjan: Robert, ravno se pogovarjamo o tebi. Vstopi!
Sergej: Ja, in kam bomo šli?

As Robert promised, he is taking his three neighbours out for a meal. He rings their bell to arrange when and where they will go.

Boštjan: Robert, ravno se pogovarjamo o tebi. Vstopi!
Sergej: Ja, in kam bomo šli?
 equivalents in English. One of them is malica. At every workplace and in schools there is time for malica at around 10 or 11 o'clock. It is a break when you have something to eat.

Narezek is something that Slovenes usually eat in the evenings. It is a plateful of sliced cold sausages, salami, meat, cheese, and so on.

**Eating habits**

In Slovenia the working day starts earlier than in England, at 7, 8, sometimes even 6 o'clock. Even people who have an optional one-hour flexitime usually prefer to start earlier so that they can make use of the afternoon that's left.

In general people don't have a big breakfast, they normally have a coffee and bread with butter (maslo) or margarine (margarina) and jam. Marmelada means 'jam' in Slovene. Naturally, there is a variety of jams. Here are some names for fruit and the adjectives which describe the type of jam:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fruit</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apricot</td>
<td>marelčina marmelada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plum</td>
<td>slivova marmelada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strawberry</td>
<td>jagodna marmelada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raspberry</td>
<td>malinova marmelada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bilberry</td>
<td>borovničeva marmelada</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Another common dish is kompt (stewed fruit), which is made of a variety of fruits. Below are the names for some more fruits and the adjectives which describe the salad. Note that the adjectives for jams are in the feminine form because marmelada is a feminine noun; the adjectives for fruit salads will be in the masculine form because kompt is a masculine noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fruit</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fruit</td>
<td>sadni kompt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apple</td>
<td>jabolčini kompt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peach</td>
<td>brekov konpt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pear</td>
<td>hrusčkini kompt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pineapple</td>
<td>ananasov konpt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The main meal of the day is usually kosilo (lunch), which people have as they get back from work. Večerja (supper) is a cold meal, often sliced salami, sausages and cheese, which is called narezek. However, when people work until later, or when the evening meal is a special occasion, they do have a bigger supper.

The verbs you will most often come across to do with meals are
jesti (to eat) and piti (to drink). They are both slightly irregular and are conjugated here for you:

**Jesti**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present tense</th>
<th>Past/future tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jem</td>
<td>sem/bom jedel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ješ</td>
<td>si/boš jedel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>je</td>
<td>je/bo jedel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dual</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeva</td>
<td>sva/bova jedla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jesta</td>
<td>sta/bosta jedla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jesta</td>
<td>sta/bosta jedla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jemo</td>
<td>smo/bomo jedli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeste</td>
<td>ste/boste jedli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jejo</td>
<td>so/bodo jedli</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Je can mean both ‘he, she it is’ and ‘he, she, it eats’. The meaning of je depends on the context and on the pronunciation of the final e.

**Piti**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present tense</th>
<th>Past/future tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pijem</td>
<td>sem/bom pil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piješ</td>
<td>si/boš pil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pije</td>
<td>je/bo pil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dual</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pijeva</td>
<td>sva/bova pila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pijeta</td>
<td>sta/bosta pila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pijeta</td>
<td>sta/bosta pila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pijemo</td>
<td>smo/bomo pil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pijete</td>
<td>ste/boste pil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pijemo</td>
<td>so/bodo pil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Useful expressions to do with eating are:

- biti lačen/-čna: to be hungry
- biti želen/-jna: to be thirsty
- biti sit/-a: to be full
- zrediti se: to put on weight
- shujsati: to lose weight

Slovenes eat a great variety of food; all sorts of meat dishes, fish, salads, potatoes prepared in a variety of ways. You can eat in all sorts of places.

If a waiter comes to you when you are at the door of a restaurant you say:

Mizo za dva/tri/siri ... A table for two/three/four ...

You can ask:

Ali je tista miza pri oknu rezervirana?
Is that table by the window reserved?

You may see a note on the table saying Rezervirano, meaning reserved.

Whenever you ask if you can have something you can say:

Ali lahko dohim ...? Can I have ...?

You may want to ask a waiter if he can recommend something:

Ali mi lahko kaj priporočate? Can you recommend something to me?

You may want something small (a snack): Nekaj malega.

**Tipping**

Service is usually not included in the bill. You can give the waiter a tip (napitnina).

**To do**

There are a few verbs in Slovene which mean ‘to do’. They are: narediti, napraviti, storiti, delati. The verbs narediti, napraviti and storiti are usually followed by an object; they imply that someone is getting something done. For example:
Ali si naredil vse, kar si misli?
Ja, napravil sem vse.
As you know, delati also means 'to work'. When it means 'to do' it is translated into English in the progressive form, as in:
Kaj delaš danes?
What are you doing today?

Exercise 1

Match the names of the fruits below with their English equivalents. All the fruits are in the plural form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovenian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jabolka</td>
<td>bilberries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hruske</td>
<td>plums</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marelice</td>
<td>strawberries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slive</td>
<td>apricots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>borovnice</td>
<td>apples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jagode</td>
<td>pears</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 2

Boštjan surprised his fellow students and Robert one evening and made a large fruit salad. He had been to the fruit market in the morning, where he bought a variety of fruits. Put his request into English. Greet the greengrocer at the stall and ask if you can get:

1. 1 kg apples
2. ½ kg apricots
3. 4 pears
4. 2 peaches
5. 1 pineapple

Exercise 3

You take a friend to a restaurant. As you enter, a waiter standing by the door greets you.

1. Greet him back and ask for a table for two.
   The waiter takes you to a table but you don't particularly want to sit there.

Exercise 4

Can you make up questions to which you could get the following responses?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovenian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kozarce vina, prosim.</td>
<td>Ask for a wine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Ja, rad imam testenine. | Yes, I have something.
| Jedilni list je na mizi. | The menu is on the table. |
| Ne, nisem lačen. Pozno sem imel kosilo. | No, I'm not hungry. I had something late. |
| Ne, hvala. Ne pijem kave. | No, thank you. I don't want coffee. |

Exercise 5

Can you fill in a conjunction word in each of the sentences below as suggested by the English word in brackets?

1. Iskal sem te, (but) nisem te našel.
2. Bil sem v trgovini, ampak nisem kupil (neither) kruha (nor) mleka.
3. Poklical sem te, (because) ti moram nekaj povedati.
4. Kako si vedel, (that) sem doma?
5. Nisem se dobro počutil, (that is why) sem ostal doma.
6. Ostani še malo, (if) imaš čas.
Dialogue 2

Ali imaš rad ribe?

Do you like fish?

Robert has left it to the boys to choose the place where they will go and, knowing that he doesn't eat red meat, they take him to a restaurant noted for fish.

Davor: Ali bomo sedeli zunaj, ali bi šli raje noter?

Robert: Ostanimo zunaj, prijetno in topljo je.

Davor: Ja, in ni prepovedano kaditi!

Robert: Naročimo steklenico dobrega slovenskega vina. Ali bi vi raje pivo?

Davor: Ne, Boštjan in jaz bi vino, ampak Sergej danes ne bo pil ne vina ne piva.

Robert: Zakaj ne?

Davor: Ni mu dobro, z nekaj dni se ne počuti dobro.

Robert: Kaj bi pil?

Davor: Vprašali ga bomo, ko pride nazaj. Na stranički je šel. O, natakar, ali lahko dobimo jedilni list, prosim?

Natakar: Ja, izvolite. Ali lahko prinese pijačo?

Davor: Počakajmo Sergeja.

Natakar: Prišel bom nazaj.

Davor: Kaj je to 'prikuhe'?

Robert: To so jedi, ki jih dobiš zraven h glavni jedi. Robert, ta restavracija je znana po ribah. Ali imaš rad ribe?

Robert: Ja, zelo. O, tukaj vidim, 'ribc na žaru'.

Davor: Ja. Ali hočeš solato?

Boštjan: Davor, pusti ga, naj se sam odloči! Ali ti že veš, kaj bo?

Davor: Are we going to sit out or shall we go inside?

Robert: Let's stay outside, it's pleasant and warm.

Davor: Yes, and smoking isn't prohibited here.

Robert: Let's order a bottle of good Slovene wine. Or would you prefer to drink beer?

Davor: No, Boštjan and I would like wine but Sergej won't drink either wine or beer today.

Robert: Why not?

Davor: He isn't well. He hasn't been well for the past few days.

Robert: What will he drink?

Davor: We'll ask him when he gets back. He went to the lavatory. Oh, waiter, can we have the menu, please?

Waiter: Yes, here you are. Can I get you anything to drink?

Robert: Let's wait for Sergej.

Waiter: I'll come back.

Robert: What is this 'prikuhe'?

Davor: These are the dishes you get with your main meal. Robert, this restaurant is noted for fish. Do you like fish?

Robert: Yes, very much. Oh, I see it here, 'grilled fish'.

Davor: Yes. Do you want a salad?

Boštjan: Davor, leave him to decide. Do you know what you'll have?

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sedeti</th>
<th>to sit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ostati</td>
<td>to stay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naročiti</td>
<td>to order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steklenica</td>
<td>bottle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nekaj dni</td>
<td>few days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jedilni list</td>
<td>menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prinesi</td>
<td>to bring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pijača</td>
<td>drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prikuhe</td>
<td>side orders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jedi</td>
<td>dishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glavna jed</td>
<td>main meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biti znan-a</td>
<td>to be famous/noted for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ribe</td>
<td>fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>na žaru</td>
<td>grilled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pustiti</td>
<td>to leave</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

Food and drink

A standard menu in Slovenia looks like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jedilni list</th>
<th>Menu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Predjedi</td>
<td>Starters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Juhe</td>
<td>Soups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goveja juha z rezanci</td>
<td>beef soup with noodles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zelenjavna juha</td>
<td>vegetable soup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gobova juha</td>
<td>mushroom soup</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Talking about food

Whenever you ask for 'a glass of', 'a piece of', 'a plate of', the noun of whatever you are talking about will be in the genitive case in Slovene, for example:

- kozarec vina, piva, vode ... a glass of wine, beer, water
- kos kruha, peciva ... a piece of bread, cake...

If a waiter should tell you that something is not on the menu, or if you want to say that you don't like something, the item will be in the genitive case because all the nouns followed by a negative verb are in the genitive case in Slovene.

Neither ... nor

You know that to express 'either ... or' you simply use ali ... ali. To express 'neither ... nor' you just use the words ne ... ne or niti ... niti. Here are some examples:

- ne ti ne jaz
- Nisi ne lačen, ne žejem. I'm neither thirsty nor hungry.
- Niti gotovine, niti kreditne kartice nimam pri sebi.
- I have neither cash nor my credit card on me.

Note how Davor says in the dialogue Sergej ne bo pil ne vina ne piva.

The conditional

The conditional in Slovene is formed with the word bi, which remains the same for all persons and numbers, and the participle ending in -i, which you also use to form the past and the future tense. The word bi can be translated by 'would', 'should', 'if ... were'. Let's take the verb pisati in its conditional form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jaz bi pisal/-a</td>
<td>midva bi pisala</td>
<td>mi bi pisali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ti bi pisal/-a</td>
<td>vidva bi pisala</td>
<td>vi bi pisali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on bi pisal</td>
<td>onadva bi pisala</td>
<td>oni bi pisali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one bi pisala</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ono bi pisalo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The uses of the conditional

The conditional is most often used in ‘if’ clauses. You know the word ěe (if), which usually introduces the ‘if’ clause. Whilst in English the past tense is used in the ‘if’ clause, in Slovene, the conditional of the verb is used in both the ‘if’ clause and the main clause, for example:

Če bi imel čas, bi šel na kavo. If I had the time I’d go for a coffee.

Če bi vedela, bi ti povedala. If I knew I’d tell you.
The personal pronouns are usually omitted and it depends on the context of the conversation in Slovene how they are translated into English. For example:

Če ne bi vedel ..., ne bi predlagal ... If I didn’t know ... I wouldn’t have suggested ...

This sentence, out of context, could be translated in three ways:

If I didn’t know ...
If you didn’t know ...
If he didn’t know ...

When you want to express a hypothesis in the future tense, you use the conditional in the ‘if’ clause, unlike in English, where you use the present tense. For example:

Če bo prišel, ga bom vprašal. If he comes I’ll ask him.

Če bo deževalo, bomo ostali doma. If it rains we’ll stay at home.

Regardless of which clause comes first, they are always separated by a comma.

You also use the conditional when you want to translate the following phrases: ‘would like, could, ought’ or ‘should’. Here are a few examples:

Rad bi vedel ... I would like to know ...
Rada bi ti pomagala ... I would like to help you ...
Lahko bi mi povedal ... You could have told me ...
Danes bi lahko šli ... Today we could go ...
Morala bi telefongrit ... I ought to telephone ...
Moral bi ti pokazati ... I should have shown you ...

The pluperfect conditional does exist in Slovene but it is hardly used. Instead you use the present conditional, as discussed above. Notice also how you can tell in Slovene whether a male or a female is speaking.

If I were you ...

To express this in Slovene you say Če bi bil-a jaz na tvojem mestu ... meaning literally ‘If I were in your place ...’. Here are some examples:

pozanimati se to find out

Če bi bila jaz na tvojem mestu, bi se prej pozanimala. If I were you I’d find out myself first.
Če bi bil jaz na tvojem mestu, bi šel sam. If I were you, I’d go on my own.

Leave me to do this

When you want to tell someone to allow you or someone else to do something you use the verb pustiti (to let, to permit, to allow) in the imperative form and the personal pronoun in the accusative case, for example:

Pusti jo, naj postuša radio! Let her listen to the radio!
Pusti jih, naj se igrajo! Leave them to play!

Notice how Boštjan says to Davor in the dialogue Pusti ga (Roberta), naj se sam odloči! If you want to tell someone to leave you alone you use the expression:

Pusti me pri miru! Leave me alone!

Exercise 6

You are in a restaurant on your own. Look at the menu following dialogue I again and order yourself a three-course meal and something to drink.
Exercise 7

The waiter has brought the food but things are missing. Ask him for:
1 salt and pepper
2 some bread
3 another green salad
4 a knife and fork
5 a napkin

Exercise 8

Complete the second half of the sentence as suggested:
1 Če bi imel čas, I'd look at the television.
2 Če bi vedela, she'd tell you.
3 Če bi bil ta film dober, I'd suggest you go to the cinema.
4 Če bi imel njegovo telefonsko številko, I'd call him.
5 Če bošt prišel jutri zvečer, you could bring me that book.

Exercise 9

You are talking to a colleague at work who says the things listed on the left to you. Which comments on the right could you use to answer him?

1 Danes je zelo mrzlo. (a) Ali si vegetariancc?
2 Danes nisem imel ne zajtrka ne kosila. (b) Moraš biti zelo utrujen.
3 Kdaj igraš tenis? (c) Ja, temperatura je minus pet stopinj celsiusa.
4 Ne jem mesa. (d) Rdeč je.
5 Že vses teden delam od osmih do šestih. (e) Ali si lačen?
6 Kakšne barve je tvoj novi avto? (f) Spor'adi in v jeseni.

Exercise 10

Križanka

1 menu
2 cabbage
3 steak
4 ice-cream
5 spoon
6 fork
7 knife
8 cheese
9 milk
10 rice
11 salad
12 cake

Dialogue 3

Dober tek!

Enjoy your meal!

The waiter has brought the food they ordered to the table and is asking them whether there is anything else they would like with it

NATAKAR: Ali bi še kaj drugega?
BOŠTIAN: Jaz čakam še na solato.
ROBERT: Sol in poper, prosim.
NATAKAR: Tukaj sta, na mizi. Solato bom takoj prinesel. Ali bi še kaj za piti?
ROBERT: Ja, se cno steklenico vina, prosim.
DAVOR: Ali lahko prineseš še nekaj kosov kruha?
NATAKAR: Črnegal ali belega?
DAVOR: Vsakega malo. O, skoraj bi pozabil, ali lahko dobimo eno steklenico mineralne vode?
NATAKAR: Ja, prinesel jo bom. Dober tek!
WAITER: Would you like anything else?
BOŠTIAN: I'm still waiting for my salad.
ROBERT: Salt and pepper, please.
WAITER: They are here, on the table. I'll bring the salad straight
Robert: Another bottle of wine, please.
Davor: Can you bring a few more slices of bread?
Waiter: Brown or white?
Davor: Some of each. Oh, I almost forgot, can we have a bottle of mineral water?
Waiter: Yes, I'll bring it. Enjoy your meal!

Vocabulary
salt
pepper
a slice of bread
mineral water
enjoy your meal

Language points
Dober tek! ☎️
This is a phrase said at the table almost without exception. Whether you are in a restaurant or at home or even if someone you know sees you eating, they will say Dober tek!, meaning 'Enjoy your meal!'!

Excuse me, waiter, this is no good!
If something is not as it should be or if you'd like to complain about a particular dish, you will have to call the waiter and tell him what the matter with it. You address him with Oprostite, ... and tell him what there is wrong.

Exercise 11
Put the sentences below into the conditional, as in the example:

Nisem bil lačen, zato nisem jedel kosilo.
Če bi bil lačen, bi jedel kosilo.

The following adjectives usually describe food:
kuhan/-a/-o cooked
pečen/-a/-o fried, baked
slan/-a/-o salted
neslan/-a/-o unsalted
kisel/-sla/-slo sour
sladek/-dka/-dko sweet
okusen/-sna/-sno tasty

You know that to say that something is 'too ...' you put the prefix pre- onto the adjective, as for example preslan (too salty), presladek (too sweet). To say that something is 'not ... enough' you say ni dovolj ..., for example:

Krompir ni dovolj kuhan. The potatoes aren't cooked enough.

More about the conditional
In conversation you can omit the verb and only say bi when you know what you are referring to. This is particularly common in restaurants or in other places where you are served.

When you are offering something to somebody or asking them whether they would like something you also use bi without the verb. A waiter might ask you:

Ali bi se kaj drugega? Would you like anything else?
Ali bi čaj ali kavo? Would you like tea or coffee?

I almost forgot!

Very often the conditional is used with the word skoraj (almost, nearly). Here are some common expressions:

Skoraj bi zgresil! I almost missed it!
Notice how Davor says to the waiter:

Skoraj bi pozabil ... I almost forgot ...

Skoraj bi pozabil ... I almost forgot ...

Excercise 11
Put the sentences below into the conditional, as in the example:

Nisem bil lačen, zato nisem jedel kosilo.
Če bi bil lačen, bi jedel kosilo.
1 Nisi poslušala, zato nisi slišala.
2 Nisem vedel, zato ti nisem povedal.
3 Nisem je videl, zato je nisem pozdravil.
4 Očko je odprto, zato je tako mrzlo.
5 Nisem imel tvoje telefonske številke, zato te nisem poklical.

Exercise 12

Answer the questions below from the following dialogue in a restaurant between Oto and a waiter
Oto: Kaj mi priporočate?
Natakar: Naše ribe so zmenj sveže.
Oto: Ta teden sem imel za kosilo vsak dan ribe. Danes sem misli na nekaj drugo.
Natakar: Ali želite kakšno solatko?
Oto: Ja, solato bom. In malo kruha.
Natakar: In kaj bi pili?
Oto: Sadnš sok, prosim.
1 What does the waiter recommend Oto, and why?
2 How does Oto respond to the waiter’s recommendation?
3 What does he eventually order to eat and to drink?

Exercise 13

A waiter brought you what you had ordered but things are not quite to your taste. Call him and tell him what the matter is with your dishes, following the example below:

potatoes not cooked enough
Oprostite, natakar, ta krompir ni dovolj kuhan.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>soop</td>
<td>unsalted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salad</td>
<td>too acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steak</td>
<td>underdone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rice</td>
<td>too salty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vegetables</td>
<td>not cooked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 14

Which word in each line is the odd one out, and why?
1 kozarce, jabolko, kružnik, nož
2 omara, pisarna miza, stol, malica
3 zajtrk, večerja, večer, kosilo
4 predjed, prikuha, kosilo, sladica
5 slab, pečen, kruh, kisel

Exercise 15

Pronunciation exercise. The letter e is probably one of the most difficult to pronounce in Slovene. You must first remember that e is always pronounced as in 'Emma', and not as in 'Eve'. So, the differences with the letter e are really ones of stress and intonation.

You have seen that je can mean 'he, she, it is', or 'he, she, it eats', depending on how the final e is pronounced. When je means 'to be' the e is stressed but short:

When je means 'to eat' the e is stressed and long:
Robert ne je mesa ampak rad je ribe. Tudi Davor jih rad je. Vsak vegetarjanec ne je rib.

In some words, e is semi-pronounced, almost silent, as in: pes, ves, zrezek, pesem.

Let's pronounce a few more words and try to recognize the differences.
poglej! --- veš! --- Eva --- oče
želen sem! --- sestra --- cena --- vroče je
ne smeš se! --- učenen --- lepa --- hoče

Dialogue for comprehension

They finished their meal and are now on their way to the place where jazz is played on Friday evening. They talk about the meal and Davor asks Robert when he will cook them a meal. See why he hasn’t done it before, what he likes cooking best and what he will make.
Davor: Robert, ali ti je bilo všeč?
Davor: Ja, mi po navadi pijemo to vino z malo mineralne vode.
Robert: Ali ga mešate?
Davor: Ja, temu se reče 'spricer'. Robert, kdaj nam boš ti skuhal kakšno pristno angleško jed?
Robert: Če bi imel več časa, bi to že zdavnaj napravil. Naslednji tenen en večer!
Davor: Ali rad kuhaš?
Davor: Kaj?
Robert: Boš videl!

11 Gripo imate!
You have flu!

In this lesson you will learn about:
- More parts of the body
- How to describe how you feel when you are ill
- The Slovene health resorts
- Words for some illnesses and adjectives describing what sort of illness someone has
- How verbal nouns are formed

Dialogue 1 ☝️

Zelo slabo se počutim
I'm feeling terrible

Robert wakes up one morning feeling terrible and on his way to work he goes to the chemist to get some medicine

Lekarnar: Dobro jutro.
Lekarnar: Ali imate temperaturo?
Robert: Ne vem, nisem si je izmeril.
Lekarnar: Kako dolgo se že počutite slabo?
Robert: Od včeraj. Želodec me boli in v glavi se mi vrti. Vse vidim megleno.
Lekarnar: Mislim, da je najbolje, če greste k zdravniku, gospod.
On vas bo pregledal in predpisal zdravila.
CHEMIST: Good morning.
ROBERT: Good morning. Could I have some aspirin or some similar tablets. I'm feeling terrible. I couldn't sleep all night. I was vomiting and I have diarrhoea.

CHEMIST: Do you have a temperature?
ROBERT: I don't know, I didn't take it.
CHEMIST: For how long have you been feeling ill?
ROBERT: Since yesterday. I have a stomach ache and I feel dizzy.
CHEMIST: I think it is best if you go to the doctor, sir. He'll check you and prescribe medicine.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>podoben</td>
<td>similar, alike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>izmeriti</td>
<td>to take one's temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temperatura</td>
<td>temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vrteti(se)</td>
<td>to turn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lekarna</td>
<td>chemist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gripa</td>
<td>flu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>megljen</td>
<td>foggy, hazy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pregledati</td>
<td>to examine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>predpisati</td>
<td>to prescribe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zdravila</td>
<td>medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bruhati</td>
<td>to vomit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>driska</td>
<td>diarrhoea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

Parts of the body

Refer back to lesson 7, where you learnt some parts of the body. Here are a few more:

telo - body
obraz - face
hrbet - križ (coll.) - back
nos - nose
vrat - neck
usta - mouth
lice - lica - cheek/s
uho - ušesa - ear/s
oko - oči - eye/s
las - lasje - hair
zob - zobje - tooth/teeth

Note that even though there is a dual form in Slovene parts of the body of which there are two are most often referred to in the plural. You would, for example, say: Ušesa/oči/lica me bolijo (My ears/eyes/cheeks hurt).

Here are some parts of the body which are normally used in the plural. This means that they are followed by a verb in the plural, and you say:

Rebra me bolijo! My ribs hurt!
pljuča lungs
jetera liver
usta mouth
rebra ribs

At the chemist

Lekarna means 'dispensing chemist' (you may hear people calling it farmacija or apoteka). In Slovenia, lekarna is a place where you go primarily for zdravila (medicine). It is a great offence to a lekarnor or a farmacod (a pharmacist) if you think of them as shop assistants. They are specially trained and can help you with minor illnesses. They know - or should know - what they are talking about. However, if you should need a recept (a prescription) for your medicine you will have to see a doctor. If you are in a really bad way you can poklicati zdravnik na dom (call a doctor to your home). Otherwise you go to see a doctor, in which case you will have to wait in a čakalnica (waiting room).

During non-working hours you will always find a dežurni zdravnik (duty doctor) and a dežurna lekarna (duty chemist) in town. You will be able to find out from the paper which doctor and chemist are on duty on particular weekends or holidays. If your illness is more serious you may need to go to the bolnica (hospital).

Komu sem podoben? (Who do I look like?)

The expression biti podoben means 'to resemble', 'to look like', and it is followed by a noun in the dative case. For example:

Komu je podobna Sabina? Who does Sabina look like?
Sabina je podobna mami. Sabina looks like her mother.
očetu - her father.
Sandra.
Robertu.

More about personal names when used with case endings

You may find it odd how personal names and names of places change. They take the endings of the case they are in, which is determined by their function. Let's take the names Sabina, Sandra and Robert. Here are six sentences where these names have been used in all six Slovene cases:

1. Sabina je dežurna lekarna.
2. Sandra, ljubljam te.
3. Robertu se ne spominje.
5. Je Robert užas v naslovu.
Unstressed words (enclitics)

Some words, like se, ji, ga, si, etc., are never stressed. They include the following.

The short form of the personal pronouns: these can only be used when you know who you are talking about. They cannot stand at the beginning of a sentence.

Ali ga vidit? Do you see him?
Ne vidim ga. I don’t see him.

Most prepositions: these precede the word they refer to:
V službi sem bil. I was at work.
Ali si sel na banko? Did you go to the bank?

The forms of the verb 'to be': these follow the subject or the predicate of its verb:
Kako si? How are you?
Utrjen sem. In kako ste vi? I’m tired. And how are you?

Conjunctions: these are most often placed before the word they refer to. Some do occur at the beginning of the sentence.
Ali ti, ali on. Either you or him.
Dobro več, da oba ne moreta. You know well that you both can’t.

Relative pronouns

Relative pronouns are words which connect the subordinate with the main clause. Relative pronouns usually qualify nouns and in Slovene they are declined. The relative pronouns used most often, ‘who’ and ‘which’, are translated by ki and kateri in Slovene. Look at these examples:

To je knjiga, ki jo že dolgo bomo rabili. This is the book I’ve been looking for for a long time.
Exercise 3

Fill in the correct forms of the suggested verbs in the correct form:
1. Ali lahko (mi) ... darila tukaj? (to buy)
2. Zakaj se ne moreš ...? (to decide)
3. Ali lahko (jaz) ... angleško? (to speak)
4. Ali ... pride tudi moj prijatelj? (can)
5. Danes oni ... priti. (cannot)

Exercise 4

Match the Slovene words for the parts of the body with the English ones:
- usta  - face
- zob    - neck
- lasje  - eye
- hrbet (križ) - body
- obraz  - mouth
- vrat    - tooth
-oko     - hair
-telo    - back

Exercise 5

How would you tell someone that the following parts of the body hurt?
1. your tooth
2. your stomach
3. your ears
4. your back
5. everything

Dialogue 2

Poklical bom zdravnik

I'll call the doctor

Robert goes straight home from the chemist and knocks on his neighbours' door. Boštjan comes out and knows there is something the matter with Robert.

Boštjan: Robert, kaj ti je?

Robert: Sam ne vem. Bil sem v lekarni, kjer so mi rekli, naj grem k zdravniku. Vedno slabšo se počutim. Na poti domov sem se začel poteti.


Robert: Ja, ampak bog ve kje. Nujno moram poklicati Mateja.

Boštjan: Vstopi! Ti bom dal termometer.

Robert: Ne vem, če bom preživel.


Boštjan: Robert, what's the matter with you?
Robert: I don’t know myself. I’ve been to the chemist where they told me that I should go to the doctor. I am feeling worse all the time. I started to sweat on the way home.

Boštjan: Lie down. I’ll call the doctor. Did you take your temperature? Do you have a thermometer?

Robert: Yes, but God knows where. I must call Matej urgently. I won’t be able to go to the meeting. I can hardly stand up.

Boštjan: Come in. I’ve got a thermometer.

Robert: I don’t know if I’ll survive.

Boštjan: Don’t be stupid. You have flu. As far as I know half of the town has it. You won’t die from flu.

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>poteti se</td>
<td>to sweat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uleči se</td>
<td>to lie down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vročina</td>
<td>temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(more colloquial)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>termometer</td>
<td>thermometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bog ve!</td>
<td>God knows!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preživeti</td>
<td>to survive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

How do you feel?

If you are unwell it is important to be able to describe how you feel. Here are some expressions:

Ne počutim se dobri. I’m not feeling well.

Bošči sem. I’m ill.

Prelajem. I have a cold.

Glava/grožžod/čo/šve me hol. My head/throat/stomach/everything hurts.

If you don’t know the name of the part of the body which hurts you can always point to it and say:

Tukaj me bol. It hurts here.

Here are some verbs which describe a physical state:

kašljati (kašljam) to cough
khadi (khham) to sneeze
bruhati (bruham) to vomit

The verb zbolešči means ‘to get ill’.bolezen means ‘ill’. The verb ozdraviti se means ‘to get well’; zdravje means ‘health’.

If you know what your illness is, here are the names of some specialist doctors you might need:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zdravnik</td>
<td>a general term for a health doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otroški zdravnik</td>
<td>a paediatrician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kirurg</td>
<td>a surgeon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zobozdravnik</td>
<td>a dentist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ginekolog</td>
<td>a gynecologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psiholog</td>
<td>a psychologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psihiater</td>
<td>a psychiatrist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

More about adjectives and demonstrative pronouns

You know that in Slovene adjectives take endings depending on the gender of the noun they modify. Some adjectives are proper adjectives, like lep, dober, majhen, and so on; whereas words like takšen or tak (such), neki (some), and all adjectives which indicate possession like moj, tvoj, naš, are pronominal adjectives. They also have to agree with the noun they modify and they give you an answer to the questions kakšen? (what?, what kind of?), kateri? (which one?), čigav (whose?).

In lesson 2 you learnt that in Slovene there are three kinds of demonstrative pronoun which qualify nouns. Because they can qualify a noun in the singular, dual or plural, they have the following forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m. ta, tisti, oni</td>
<td>ta, tista, ona</td>
<td>ti, tisti, oni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. ta, tista, ona</td>
<td>ti, tista, ona</td>
<td>te, tiste, one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. to, tisto, ono</td>
<td>ti, tisti, oni</td>
<td>ta, tista, ona</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tisti and oni are both translated by ‘that’ in English. In Slovene, tisti points to things which are a little further away; oni points to things which are very far away. For example:
Te tablete lahko kupiš, tiste pa ne.
One, ki sem jib jemal lani, so bile dobre.

Note: In Slovene the verb you use to say that you are taking some pills is jemati (tablete).
In some cases, however, you use ta in Slovene where you would use ‘that’ in English. For example:

Ali si mu povedal to? Did you tell him that?
To ni bilo prav. That wasn’t right!

The pronoun tak/-al/-o (such) is a demonstrative pronoun and it points to quality. For example:

Taki avtomobili so dragi. Such cars are expensive.
Take obleke so mi všec. I like such dresses.

The pronoun toliki/-a/-o (such) is also a demonstrative pronoun and it points to quantity. For example:

Že dolgo ni zapadlo toliko It’s a long time since so much snow has fallen.
Toliko jih je bilo! There were so many of them!

Here are the forms of the pronouns tak and tolik:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m.</td>
<td>tak, tolik</td>
<td>taka, tolika</td>
<td>taki, toliki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.</td>
<td>taka, tolika</td>
<td>taki, toliki</td>
<td>take, tolike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n.</td>
<td>tako, toliko</td>
<td>taki, toliki</td>
<td>taka, tolika</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As far as I know

You will have noticed how Boštjan said in the dialogue: V kolikor jaz vem, jo (gripo) ima pol mesa. The expression ‘as far as I know’ is in V kolikor jaz vem. Here are some examples:

V kolikor jaz vem, ima v jeseni veliko ljudi gripo. As far as I know, a lot of people have flu in autumn.
V kolikor jaz vem, je to zaradi spremembe vremena. As far as I know, this is because of the change in the weather.
V kolikor jaz vem, gripa ni huda bolezen. As far as I know, flu isn’t a dangerous illness.

Komaj

Komaj means ‘hardly’, ‘scarcely’, as in:

Komaj čakam! I can hardly wait!
Komaj vidim! I can hardly see!

Note how Robert says in the dialogue Komaj še stojim! When you use komaj in Slovene you don’t start the sentence with the personal pronoun as you do in English; the personal pronoun is indicated in the verb.
If you want to say that you can hardly wait for something to happen you have to use a relative clause, as in:

Komaj čakam, da bo zima. I can hardly wait for the winter.
Komaj čakam, da pridejo. I can hardly wait for them to come.

Zaradi

Zaradi means ‘because of’ and it is followed by a noun in the genitive case. Note how Boštjan tells Robert in the dialogue Zaradi gripe ne boš umrl!

Exercise 6

Sabina has applied for a temporary job during her summer holiday. She was asked what she does in her spare time and has made a list of things she could put down on her application form. Can you fill in the verbs (given below in their infinitive form) in the first person singular as she would use them?

poslušati, gledati, kuhati, brati, igrati, učiti se

1. ... knjige.
2. ... klavir.
3. ... glasbo.
4. ... televizijo.
5. ... tuje jezike.
6. Rada ...
1. he is ill.
2. he has flu.
3. he will telephone again.
4. he is going to see the doctor.
5. he will be here tomorrow.

Exercise 8

(a) Say the words in italics in another way, following the example which has been done for you:

- Zaradi slabega vremena smo ostali doma.
  - Zato ker je bilo slab vreme, smo ostali doma.
- Zaradi bolezni prejšnji teden nisem bil v službi.
- Zaradi visokih cen si nisem nič kupil.

(b) Tell your friend that:
1. you can hardly wait for tomorrow.
2. you can hardly wait for spring.

Exercise 9

Match the questions you were asked (on the left) to the answers you could give (on the right):

1. Kako dolgo se že slab počutiš?
   - (a) Zato ker nimam časa.
2. Ali imas temperaturo?
   - (b) Vrat in hrbet.
3. Ali si bil v lekarini?
   - (c) Ja, kupil sem si tablete proti boličinam.
4. Kaj te boli?
   - (d) Od srede.
5. Zakaj ne greš k zdravniku?
   - (e) Ne vem. Nisem si je izmeril.

Exercise 10

Peter invited Helena out one day. She clearly didn’t want to accept the invitation. Look at the way the conversation went:

PETER: Helena, ali hočeš iți danes zvečer v kino?
HELENA: Ne, žal mi je. Že ves teden se slab počutim. Grlo me bole. In v kolikor vem, bo danes zvečer deževalo.

Suppose you were invited somewhere and you didn’t want to accept the invitation. Can you think of some excuses you could give? Write them down.

Dialogue 3

Napisal vam bom recept

I’ll write out a prescription for you

The doctor arrived quite quickly and he is speaking to Robert

ZDRAVNIK: Kaj vas boli?
ROBERT: Najbolj me boli želodec. Ves čas mi gre na bruhanje.

ZDRAVNIK: In komaj se premikam.
ROBERT: Ali ste si izmerili vročino?


DOCTOR: What is hurting?
ROBERT: The worst pain is in my stomach. I want to vomit the whole time. And I can hardly move.

DOCTOR: Have you taken your temperature?

ROBERT: Yes, it is 39.

DOCTOR: Open your mouth! Take a deep breath! You have bad flu. Stay at home for a week, and keep warm. I’ll write you a prescription. Take one tablet three times a day. If you start coughing take two spoonfuls of the syrup, every six hours. Come for a check-up in a week.

Vocabulary

premiškat se to move
pregled check-up, medical examination
tresti (se) to shake
pregledati to examine
dihati to breathe
tablete tablets

Note: recept means both a prescription and a cooking recipe.
Language points

Every day, every six hours ...

When you want to say that something takes place at a given interval you use the word vsak (every). Whilst the word every never changes in English, its Slovene counterpart vsak changes according to gender, case and number. Here are a few examples:

Vsako leto grem na dopust. I go on holiday every year.
Vsakih šest mesecov grem k I go to the dentist every six months for a check up.
Vsak dan se učim slovenščino. I'm learning Slovene every day.

What sort of illness do you have?

Here are some adjectives which describe what sort of illness you may have:

- ozdravljiv/-al/-o: curable
- neozdravljiv/-al/-o: terminal
- naletljiv/-al/-o: contagious

The verbs used when you are ill are:

- zboleti: to become ill
- biti bolan/bolina: to be ill
- zdraviti: to be cured, to be treated
- ozdraviti: to cure, to be cured, to get well

Some nouns coming from these verbs are:

- zdravnik: doctor (male)
- zdravnica: doctor (female)
- zdravilo: medicine
- zdravišče: spa, health resort
- zdravje: health

How words are formed

New words in Slovene are formed with suffixes. Let's look at some words you know:

- učiti: to teach
- pisati: to write
- pismo: a letter
- delati: to do, to make
- delo: work
- pismonosa: a letter
- delodajalec: employer
- delavca: worker
- delavc: worker
- delavcc: workers
- delavce: workers
- delavci: workers
- delavk: worker
- delavkce: workers
- delavka: work
- delavki: work

Verbal nouns

Verbal nouns (gerunds) are nouns which denote a verbal action (e.g. English 'cooking, walking, singing'). In Slovene, most verbal nouns are formed by replacing the -i ending of the infinitive with a -je or -jce ending. For example:

- kuhati: to cook
- kuhanje: cooking
- peti: to walk
- petje: walking
- potovati: to travel
- potovanje: travelling
- nakupovati: to shop
- nakupovanje: shopping

All of these verbal nouns are neuter in gender. Here are some verbal nouns which are formed slightly irregularly:

- živeti: to live
- življenje: living
- kaditi: to say
- kajenje: saying
- čistiti: to clean
- čiščenje: cleaning
- trpeti: to suffer
- trpljenje: suffering

Verbal nouns can mean an action (i.e. shopping, cleaning) or something that is in some way connected with that action, for example:

- meniti: to change
- mnenje: view, opinion
- dovoliti: to permit
- dovoljenje: permit, licence
- presenetiti: to surprise
- presenečenje: surprise
- prijaviti: to declare
- prijava: declaration
- delati: to do
- delo: work
- prusiti: to request
- prosnja: request
- pogovarjati se: to have a conversation

We will not go into the various rules for how these words are formed. The important thing for you is that when you come across a word which you think you don't know look at it and see if you can recognize a part of it. In the words above, you may not know the word pismonosa. You do, however, know the words pismo (a letter) and the verb nositi (to carry). Pismosna means 'postman'. Delodajalec means 'employer'; it is formed from the words delo (work) and dajati (to give). Delojcemalec means 'employee'; it is formed from the words delo and jemalec (to take).
Slovene health resorts

There is a number of thermal spas in Slovenia. One of the best known is Rogaška Slatina, which was developed as a fashionable spa in the nineteenth century and attracted such patients as the composer Franz Liszt and the Austro-Hungarian emperor.

There are other modernised spas. People still come to these spas to treat rheumatism and a variety of other ailments. The spas have increased their popularity by offering the same sort of facilities as you would find in an English health club, like slimming courses, massage, stress therapies and so on.

Positive and negative verbs

Used with a positive verb, the direct object is in the accusative case, for example:

Imam veliko denarja. I have a lot of money.
Rada pijem kava in čaj. I like drinking coffee and tea.
Danes zvečer imam čas. I have time this evening.

Used with a negative verb, the direct object is in the genitive case, for example:

Nimam nič denarja. I have no money.
Nimam rada ne kave ne čaja. I like neither coffee nor tea.
Ti nikoli nimaš časa. You never have time.

Keep in mind that all negative words like nič, nihče, nikoli, always take a negative verb in Slovene.

Exercise 12

Several people telephoned Robert at work during the week he was ill. Suppose you answered the telephone. Complete the following dialogue:

Dober dan, Zmago Kovač pri telefonu. Ali je Robert tam?
1 Tell him that he isn’t in the office today.
   Ali bo jutri tam?
2 Say that it would be better if he tried next week. Tell him that he is ill.
   O, ali veste kaj mu je?
3 Tell him that he has flu.
   Ali imate morda njegovo telefonsko številko od doma?
4 Say that you’re sorry but you don’t have it. Tell him that he telephoned this morning and told you that he would be back on Monday.
   Ce bo sč poklical ga lepo pozdravite.
5 Say that you will. (But by then you have forgotten what his name was.) Ask him politely if he could tell you again what his name is.

Exercise 13

(a) Where would you go if you needed something listed in the left column? Pair off the sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ce bi</th>
<th>bi šel/šla</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 potreboval – a zelenjavo</td>
<td>(i) na trg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 moral – a kupiti kruh in mleko</td>
<td>(ii) v lekarne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 potreboval – a znamke in pisma</td>
<td>(iii) v trgovine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 moral – a zamenjati denar</td>
<td>(iv) na pošto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 potreboval – a zdravila</td>
<td>(v) na banko</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Now rewrite the sentences saying that you can do or get things on the left at places on the right.

Exercise 14

You know that the English preposition ‘of’ is not translated into Slovene; instead the noun in the genitive case indicates it. Can you put the nouns in brackets below into the genitive case. These are all very commonly used groups of words.
**Exercise 15**

*Pronunciation exercise.* Like e, the letter o has a few sounds in Slovene. Let's try to pronounce the words where o is used. It can be narrow and stressed, as in the words *nos, zob, morje, kos, mož, noč, usem, sto, goba, olje, opera*; or long, broad and stressed, as in the words *roka, noga, ona, otok, soha.*

There aren't many words with a double vowel or consonant in Slovene. Where they appear, they are pronounced as one long sound of that letter as in:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>priimek</th>
<th>surname</th>
<th>oddaja</th>
<th>broadcasting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pooblastiti</td>
<td>to authorize</td>
<td>oddati</td>
<td>to give in, away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pooblastilo</td>
<td>authorization</td>
<td>oddahniti se</td>
<td>to take a rest, to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oddelek</td>
<td>department</td>
<td></td>
<td>recover breath</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dialogue for comprehension**

*As Robert was told he did go to see the doctor in a week's time. In the waiting room (v čakalnici) he spoke to a woman who told him about someone she knows who has had the same terrible flu for a long time already. See why she thinks Robert recovered so quickly.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kosti</th>
<th>bones</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Robert:** Oprostite, ali me bodo poklicali?

**Gospa:** Ja, ali še nikoli niste bili tukaj?

**Robert:** Ne, zdravnik je prejšnji teden prišel k meni na dom.

**Gospa:** Ali se vam je kaj hudega zgodilo?

**Robert:** Ne, gripo sem imel. Ampak komaj se premikal. Vse me je bolelo in v glavi se mi je vrtelo. Moj sosed je poklical zdravnika.

**Gospa:** Ja, ja, poznam to gripo. Moja sodelavka je že dva tedna doma. Kiha in kašlja, baje jo vse kosti bolijo. Ali se tudi vi tako počutite?

**Robert:** Ne, jaz sem že zdrav. Veliko bolje se počutim. Prišel sem samo na pregled.

**Gospa:** Imeli ste srečo. Mldi stc še! To pomaga!
12 Nekaj imam v načrtu!
I have something planned!

In this lesson you will learn about:
- How to use the locative case
- The prepositions v and na
- How to book accommodation
- How to report what other people have said
- The reflexive verbs

Dialogue 1

Lahko bi prenočili na Bledu!
We could stay the night by lake Bled!

During the summer holidays Sabina has a job as a receptionist in a hotel by lake Bled. Robert often goes there for the day, and one Saturday Sergej suggested how they could play a little trick on Sabina.

SERGEJ: Robert, ali imaš kaj v planu za danes popoldne?
ROBERT: Ne, zakaj?
SERGEJ: Po kosilu bi lahko šli na Bled. Sabina začasno dela na Bledu, v enem hotelu ob jezeru v recepciji.
ROBERT: Ja, gospa Koren je zadnje omenila, da tam dela.
SERGEJ: Jaz imam nekaj v načrtu! Danes bi lahko vsi štirje prenočili na Bledu.
ROBERT: Ne vem, če bomo dobili sobo. Sedaj je turistična sezona in gotovo je vse zasedeno.
SERGEJ: Privat se zmeraj kaj dohi. Ampak najprej homo poizkusili v hotelu, kjer dela Sabina. Ti boš šel v recep-

cijo, tebe Sabina ne pozna. Po angleško jo vprašaj, Če ima prosto sobo za štiri osebe za eno noč.

ROBERT: Ali zna angleško?
SERGEJ: Bomo videli!
SERGEJ: Robert, do you have anything planned for this afternoon?
ROBERT: No, why?
SERGEJ: We could go to lake Bled after lunch. Sabina has a temporary job in reception at a hotel by the lake.
ROBERT: Yes, Mrs Koren mentioned last time that she is working there.
SERGEJ: I have something planned. All four of us could stay the night in Bled today.
ROBERT: I don't know if we'll get a room. It is now the tourist season and surely everything must be booked.
SERGEJ: You can always stay in a private home. But first we'll try in the hotel where Sabina works. You go to the reception, she doesn't know you. Ask her in English if she has a room for four for a night.
ROBERT: Can she speak English?
SERGEJ: We'll see!

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>imeti v planu or</th>
<th>to have planned</th>
<th>prenočiti</th>
<th>to stay overnight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>imeti v načrtu</td>
<td>to have planned</td>
<td>poizkusiti</td>
<td>to try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>začasno</td>
<td>temporary</td>
<td>oseba</td>
<td>person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jezero</td>
<td>lake</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

Do you have anything planned?

The words plan and načrt mean 'plan'. If you want to ask or tell someone about your or their plans you use the expressions imeti v planu, or imeti v načrtu. For example:

Ali imaš za danes kaj v planu? Do you have anything planned for today?
Ne, ničesar nimam v planu, No, I have nothing planned. Why?
zakaj?
Jaz imam nekaj v načrtu. I have something planned. 
You can also use the verbs planirat or načrtovati, for example: 
Kaj planiraš načrtuješ za jutri? What are you planning for tomorrow?

What has been happening lately?

You know that if you put č in the cardinal numbers (as in prvič, drugi, tretji, etc.) this means 'for the first, the second, the third time'. Začnječ means 'for the last time'. Začnječ can also mean 'the other day', as in: 
Zadnječ sem ju videl. I saw her the other day.
Zadnječ sva šta na kavo. We went for a coffee the other day.
Note how Robert says in the dialogue Gospa Koren je zadnječ omenila ... You will be able to distinguish from the context of your conversation whether zadnječ means 'for the last time' or 'the other day'.
If you want to say that something has been happening recently, you use the expression zadnje čase, as in: 
Zadnje čase te nič ne vidim. I haven't been seeing you recently.
If you want to say that something has happened just at the right time you use the expression ravno v pravem času, as in: 
Ravno v pravem času si prišel. You came just at the right time.

To be doing something permanently or temporarily

The adjective stalen/-na/-o means 'permanent' and the adjective začasen/-na/-o means 'temporary'. Here are a few examples of how they are used:
Sabina ima začasno službo. Sabina has a temporary job.
Ali je to tvoja stalna služba? Is this your permanent job?
Začasno stanašem takaj. I am living here temporarily.
To je moj stalni naslov. This is my permanent address.

In which language did they tell you this?

When you want to say that something has been said in a particular language you use the preposition po, as in:

po angleško in English
po slovensko in Slovene
po nemško in German

Notice how Sergej says to Robert:
Po angleško jo vprašaj ... Ask her in English ...

The locative case

The locative case is used only as the object of the following prepositions:

pri (by, with, at): Bil sem pri zdravniku (I've been at the doctors).
po (on, by, after): Po kosilu gremo na Bled (We're going to lake Bled after lunch).
ob (at, on, when expressing time): Ob petkih delam du treh (I work until three on Fridays); (by, when expressing location):
Ta hotel je ob jezeru (This hotel is by the lake).
o (about, concerning): Ali v kaj o tej knjigi? (Do you know anything about this book?).

If the prepositions v or na tell you where something is they take the locative case. If, however, they answer the question 'where to?', i.e. if they indicate direction, they take the accusative case (see lesson 6). Here are a few more examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Locative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lahko bi šli na Bled.</td>
<td>Na Bledu je trenutno vse zasedeno.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We could go to Bled.</td>
<td>Everything is booked in Bled at the moment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gremo v hotel!</td>
<td>Prenociti bomo v hotelu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let's go to the hotel.</td>
<td>We'll stay the night in a hotel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti boš šel v recepcijo.</td>
<td>Sabina dela v recepciji.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You'll go to reception.</td>
<td>Sabina works in reception.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You may find it difficult to distinguish when to use v and when na. There isn't a rule you could follow to know when to use which preposition. Here are some examples of prepositions with places which are very commonly used:
Grem v Slovenijo
v kino
v trgovino
v kuhinjo
v posteljo
v službo

Grem na dopust
na koncert
na vrt
na nogometno tekmo
na banko
na pošto

I'm going to Slovenia
to the cinema
to the shop
to the kitchen
to bed
to work

I'm going for a holiday
to the concert
to the garden
to the football match
to the bank
to the post office

The nouns above are all in the accusative case because you are going to these places and the verb which is used implies movement. If you wanted to say that you are at these places, you would use the same prepositions, but the nouns would be in the locative case.

Keep in mind that na can also mean 'on', as in na mizi (on the table).

The endings in the locative case are as follows:

The first and the second declensions (masculine nouns)
Feminine nouns take an i ending in the singular and an ah ending in the dual and plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hiša</td>
<td>hiša</td>
<td>pri hišah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miza</td>
<td>miza</td>
<td>pri mizah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The third declension (masculine nouns)
Masculine nouns take an u ending in the singular and an ih ending in the dual and in the plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stric</td>
<td>strica</td>
<td>pri stricah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kozarec</td>
<td>kozarca</td>
<td>pri kozarci</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The fourth declension (neuter nouns)
Neuter nouns take an u ending in the singular and an ih ending in the dual and in the plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mesto</td>
<td>pri meseu</td>
<td>mesti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drevo</td>
<td>pri drevesu</td>
<td>drevesi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The dual and plural endings of the locative case happen to be the same. This is not always the case. We will look into how the dual and the plural of other cases are formed later on.

Personal pronouns in the locative case

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pri meni</td>
<td>pri nami</td>
<td>pri nas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pri tebi</td>
<td>pri vami</td>
<td>pri vasi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pri njem</td>
<td>pri njima</td>
<td>pri njih</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pri njeg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pri njo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The preposition pri has been used in all the above examples. Depending on the context of your conversation, you can use any other preposition which takes the locative case and the ending will be the same.

Demonstrative pronouns are very often used as adjectives in the locative case and they have the following endings:

Masculine and neuter nouns in singular: tem (e.g. pri tem hotelu).
Feminine nouns in singular: tej (e.g. pri tej hiši).
Dual and plural nouns for all three genders: teh (e.g. pri teh ljudeh).

The interrogative pronouns in the locative case are pri kom (by whom) or pri čem (by what).

Exercise 1

Someone wants to meet you but you can't make it because of other engagements in your diary. Tell him what you are doing at the times given below.

1. Wednesday afternoon you are at a meeting
2. Friday you have something planned
3. Next week you are not in town
4. Thursday evening you are going to the cinema
5 on Mondays you usually play basketball

Exercise 2

Anja, a friend of Sabina, does not know what Sabina is doing during the summer. She telephones Sabina's home and Sabina's mother tells her where Sabina is. Fill in Sabina's mother's lines:

**ANJA:** Dober večer, ali bi lahko govorila s Sabino?
**MAMA:** 1 Sabina is not at home. Who is calling?
**ANJA:** Jaz sem Anja, njenja prijateljica iz univerze. Ali bo jutri doma?
**MAMA:** 2 No, Sabina has a temporary job in Bled.
**ANJA:** O, nisem vedela. Kaj pa dela?
**MAMA:** 3 She is working in a hotel by the lake, at reception.
**ANJA:** Zanimivo, kako dolgo bo tam delala?
**MAMA:** 4 Two months, until October.
**ANJA:** Ali ji je všesc?
**MAMA:** 5 She says yes, but she has a lot of work. Now is the tourist season.

Exercise 3

Choose the correct alternative, referring to the dialogue:
1 Sabina ima *stahol/write* službo na Bledu.
2 *Dela* v enem hotelu v eni trgovini.
3 *Dela* v pisarni v recepciji.
4 V turistični sezoni so sobe po navadi zaseden/proste.
5 Robert/Sergej ima nekaj v planu.

Exercise 4

You are enquiring about hotel accommodation over the telephone. Ask the person who answers the phone:
1 if you could ask her something in English.
2 if she could tell you when the tourist season there is.
3 if she thinks that they would have a room free in August.
4 if she could tell you what the prices are.
5 whether you could book the room now.

Exercise 5

(a) Tell your friend that you would like to have a house:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>reka</th>
<th>river</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 by a lake.
2 on the main road.
3 by the river.

(b) Tell him also where you went yesterday:
1 to the doctor.
2 to the hairdresser.
3 to your mother's place.

Dialogue 2

Ali imate rezervacijo?

Do you have a reservation?

Robert does go to the reception where Sabina works, and tries to book a room for the night. Sabina, whom he doesn't know, is trying to help him but there is no free room. She makes other suggestions:

**ROBERT:** Dober dan.
**SABINA:** Dober dan, želite prosim?
**ROBERT:** Ali imate prosto sobo za štiri osebe za eno noč?
**SABINA:** Ne, na žalost je nimam.
**ROBERT:** Žal mi je, toda trenutno nimamo nobene proste sobe.
**SABINA:** Sredi turistične sezone smo in ob jezeru je vse zasedeno.
**ROBERT:** Ali mislite, da ne bo nihče v zadnjem trenutku odpovedal?
**SABINA:** To se redko zgodi. Ampak če želite, lahko izpolnite prijavnico. Kako dolgo bi radi ostali?
**ROBERT:** samo eno noč. Sama prenočite z zajtrkom bi radi.
**SABINA:** Jaz bom obdržala ta formular. Pokličite proti večeru! Ampak mislim, da je najbolje, če se med tem pozanimate, kje so privatne sobe. Vem, na primer, da imajo
tukaj še prostor. Lepa hiša je in ni daleč od jezera.
Poizkusite!

ROBERT: Good afternoon.
SABINA: Good afternoon, how can I help you?
ROBERT: Do you have a room for four for one night?
SABINA: Do you have a reservation?
ROBERT: No, unfortunately I don't.
SABINA: I'm sorry but we don't have any empty rooms at the moment. We are in the middle of the tourist season and all the hotels on the lake are fully booked.
ROBERT: Don't you think that someone might cancel at the last minute?
SABINA: That happens rarely. But if you like you could fill in this form. How long would you like to stay?
ROBERT: Only one night. We only want bed and breakfast.
SABINA: I'll keep this form. Call towards the evening. But I think that it is best if in the meantime you find out about private rooms. I know, for example, that they have vacancies here. It's a beautiful house and it isn't far from the lake. Try it!

Language points

Booking a room

In most major tourist centres you will find a turistična agencija (tourist agency) or some kind of tourist information office. There are different places of accommodation. In larger towns you will find hotels, and you may come across motels, which are the equivalent of the English bed and breakfast. Private houses let rooms and they will have a sign outside, usually in English and German. If you only want bed and breakfast you ask for prenočišče z zajtrkom, literally meaning 'accommodation for the night with breakfast'.

Some useful phrases when you check in are:

Ali imate prosto sobo za enega/dva/tri ..? Do you have a room for one/two/three ..?
Rad-a bi enoposteljno sobo. I would like a single room.
dvoposteljno sobo. double room.
sobo s knaplalico. room with bathroom.
sobo z balkonom. room with balcony.

Ali je v sobi radio/televizor? Is there a radio/television in the room?
Ali labko vidim sobo? May I see the room?
Koliko časa boste ostali? How long will you stay?
Kakšna je cena za eno noč en teden? What is the price for one night? one week?

Moja prtljaga je ... My luggage is ...
Če boste kaj potrebovali, pokličite recepcijo! If you should need anything, call reception!

Breakfast

In most places you will be given a continental breakfast, i.e. bread, butter and jam, tea or coffee and some juice. You may be able to order a more substantial meal, which will be eggs, ham and a variety of žalami, cheese and a variety of rolls.
How to complain

You may come across difficulties, in which case you will have to complain. If something doesn't work you say ... ne dela!

Here are a few things which may not work:

luč light
kurjava heating
prha, tuš shower

You may find that something is broken, in which case you say ... je pokvarjen/-a/-o.

Other things which may go wrong are:

Okno/omara se ne odpre/zapre. The window/wardrobe won't open/close.

Vrata se ne zaklenejo/odklenejo. The door won't lock/unlock.

More about reflexive verbs

You know that when a verb is reflexive it is either preceded or followed by si or se. Some verbs only exist in reflexive form, for example:

prepirati se to argue
smejati se to laugh
bati se to be afraid
počutiti se to feel

You use the reflexive verb when there is no object in the sentence to describe what is happening, as in:

Trgovina se odpre ob osmih. The shop opens at eight.
Banka se zapre ob šestih. The bank closes at six.
Okno se ne odpre/zapre. The window won't open/close.

When there is an object by which the action is carried out the verb is not reflexive, as in:

Trgovino odprejo ob osmih. They open the shop at eight.
Vratar zapre banko ob šestih. The doorman closes the bank at six.
Vsako jutro odprem/zaprem okno. I open/close the window every morning.

In some cases se or si can be replaced with sebe or sebi and mean 'myself, yourself, himself', etc.

Sebe poglej! Look at yourself!

Ona vidi samo sebe! She only looks after herself!
Sam sebi (si) pomagaj! Help yourself!

Note: The expression Sam/-a si pomagaj is an insulting expression. You must not use it when you want to express the English 'Help yourself' as in 'Here are some cakes and biscuits on the plate. Help yourself!' In such instances you can say Postrežiti-te si! The Slovene Sam/-a si pomagaj doesn't have this meaning!

But

In the dialogue you will have noticed Sabina say Žal mi je, toda trenutno nimamo nobene proste sobe. You know the word ampak meaning 'but'; toda is another word for 'but'. You may also see the word a, also meaning 'but'. You can use ampak, toda or a when you want to say 'but'. Ampak is the most common one in the spoken language.

Exercise 6

You want to stay the night:

RECEPTIONIST: Dober večer. Želite, prosim?
YOU: 1 Return his greeting and ask if there is a room free.
RECEPTIONIST: Ja, imamo. Sobo s kopalnico. Za kako dolgo bi jo želeli?
YOU: 2 Say for one night. Ask what the price is. And ask if he would like your passport.
RECEPTIONIST: Ja, prosim. Jutri ga boste dobili nazaj. Ali hi izpolnili ta formulir?
YOU: 3 Say yes, of course. Ask what time breakfast is.
RECEPTIONIST: Od pol sedmih do devetih zjutraj.
YOU: 4 Ask him if he knows where you could get something light to eat now.
RECEPTIONIST: Če želite večerjo, restavracija je v hotelu.
YOU: 5 Thank him and on your way to your room just ask, by the way, if there is a telephone in your room.

Exercise 7

You are staying in a hotel and late in the evening you realize that lots of things are not working. You telephone the reception and
they tell you to make a list of the faults and someone will see to them in the morning. Of course, the list has to be in Slovene. How will you write down the following?
1. The light in the bathroom doesn't work.
2. The television is broken.
3. The window in the bedroom won't open.
4. The door in the bathroom won't lock.
5. There is no telephone in the room.

Exercise 8

How could you phrase questions in order to get the words in italics as an answer? One example has been done for you.

Sebastjan stanuje pri strigu.
Kje stanuje Sebastjan?
1. To je gospod Kočvar.
2. Jutri zjutraj grem k zdravniku.
3. Izmec mi je Danjela.
4. Avtobusna postaja je za tistim hotelom.
5. Najda je ostala doma, zato ker se je slabko počutila.

Exercise 9

Re-arrange these lines so that they will make a coherent telephone conversation:

Za koliko oseb?
Ja, je. Želite, prosim?
Ne, pokličite turistične informacije. Njihovo številko imam, če želite.
Prosim?
Za dve osebi.
Dobre jutro, ali je to hotel 'Lev'?
Trenutek, prosim. Žal mi je, ampak naslednji konec tedna je vse zasedeno. Poizkusite hotel 'Slon'!
Rad bi rezerviral sobo za naslednji konec tedna.
Tja sem že poklical in tudi oni imajo vse zasedeno. Ali imate morda informacije o privatnih sobah?
Tisto številko imam sam. Hvala, nasvidenje.

Exercise 10

Write a short dialogue for the scenes below:

1. A stranger stops you on the street and asks you where the 'Kaj' restaurant is but you don't know.
2. You are about to go out and your friend seems to be looking for something. Ask her what she is looking for and, as she tells you that she is looking for her umbrella, tell her that you have seen it in the bathroom.
3. You are in a hotel and you want to go out to eat. Ask the receptionist which restaurant she would recommend and when she tells you about a new one round the corner noted for fish ask her whether it is cheap or expensive.

Dialogue 3 •

Vprašal sem, če imajo sobo za štiri

I asked if they had a room for four

Sergej: Boštjan and Davor are anxiously waiting for Robert in front of the hotel. As he comes out they ask him lots of questions about his conversation with Sabina

Sergej: Kaj je rekla?
Robert: Vprašal sem jo, če imajo prosto sobo za štiri za eno noč.
Sergej: In?
Sergej: Ali si jo vprašal, če morda ve, kje bi lahko prenočili?
Robert: Ja, pridobjala je, naj poizkusimo to privatno hišo. Baje imajo še prostor. Vprašal sem jo tudi, če ne misli, da bo kdo odpovedal.
Sergej: In kaj pravi?
Sergej: Ja, poklela bomo, verjetno zastoj, ampak kdo ve? Do večera se lahko marskaj zgodi!
Sergej: What did she say?
ROBERT: I asked her if they had a room free for four for a night.
SERGEJ: And?
ROBERT: She asked me if I had a reservation. I told her that I didn't and she said that they haven't got any empty rooms at the moment and that everything by the lake was booked.
SERGEJ: Did you ask her where we could stay the night?
ROBERT: Yes, she suggested that we should try a private house. They still have room here, apparently. I also asked her if she thought that someone would cancel at the last minute.
SERGEJ: And what did she say?
ROBERT: She said that that rarely happens. But in spite of this I have filled in a form. She said that we should call towards the evening.
SERGEJ: Yes, we will call. Most probably in vain but who knows? Lots of things can happen before the evening.

Vocabulary

redko rarely
kljub temu in spite of this
zastonj in vain
marsikaj many things

Language points

Zastonj

The word zastonj has two meanings. It can mean 'in vain', as in:

Zastonj čaka na ta avtobus. Ob nedeljah ne vozii!
You are waiting for the bus in vain. It doesn't run on Sundays!

Zastonj can also mean that something is free (of charge), as in:

'Koliko si plačal za to?' = 'Bi lo je zastonj.
'How much did you pay for this?' = 'It was free!

This happens often, rarely, sometimes

The word pogosto means 'often' and redko, redkokdaj mean 'rarely', 'seldom'. If you want to say that something happens often or seldom you use the reflexive verb zgodiš se (to happen) in the third person singular and the above adverbs. For example:

-To se redko zgodi.
-To se pogosto zgodi.
-To se ne zgodi pogosto.

Marsi/kaj/kje/kdaj/kdo

The prefix marsi in front of some pronouns tells you 'many a ...'; for example, notice how Sergej says in the dialogue: Do večera se lahko marsikaj zgodi!

Direct and reported speech

In direct speech we repeat the words of the person who has said them, for example:

Sabina je rekla: 'Trenutno nimamo nobene proste sobe.'
In indirect (or reported) speech we only give the exact meaning of what they have said, without repeating it word by word.

We can report statements, questions and commands. In English the tense which you use when you report someone's words changes but in Slovene this is much simpler. You use the same tense as was used in the original statement. The only change is the person, which is replaced by the third person.

What someone originally said or asked is usually reported with reči (to say), povedati (to tell), praviti (to say), vprašati (to ask).

Statements

Direct speech
Sabina je reklo: 'Trenutno nimamo nobene proste sobe.'
Sabina said: 'We have no rooms available at the moment.'

Indirect speech
Sabina je rekla, da trenutno nimajo nobene proste sobe.
Sabina said that they had no rooms available.

Notice that in Slovene the only difference between the sentences above is the conjunction da and the change of the personal pronoun.

Questions

Direct speech
Sabina je vprašala: 'Ali imate rezervacijo?'
Sabina asked: 'Do you have a reservation?'
Indirect speech
Sabina je vprašala, ali (če) ima rezervacijo.
Sabina asked whether he had a reservation.
When you report a question, you only change the verb into the third person in Slovene. The correct word to use is ali, which indicates a question. However, colloquially če is used much more often.

Commands

Direct speech
Sabina je rekla: 'Pokličite proti večeru!'
Sabina said: 'Call (telephone) towards evening!'

Indirect speech
Sabina je rekla, (da) naj pokličem proti večeru.
Sabina said that I should call towards evening.

When you report advice or a command you were given by someone, the imperative form of the verb which the person used is replaced by the present tense and the word naj (see lesson 8) is put in front of it. Colloquially, you will hear people use the conjunction word da, which is optional. When you give a command in Slovene you cannot use the infinitive as you do in English. Instead, you put the verb into the form of the person to whom you are referring, for example:

Rekel mi je, naj grem v trgovino. He told me to go to the shops.

Exercise 11

You are on holiday with your friend and you have gone to the reception desk of an hotel. Report back to him what has been said.
(a) You asked:
1 Do you have a double room free for a week?
2 What is the price?
3 At what time is breakfast served?
(b) The receptionist told you (use reči):
1 We have two single rooms.
2 The price is the same.
3 The rooms are large and nicely furnished.

Exercise 12

Whilst the students are waiting for Robert in front of the hotel where Sabina works they are gossiping about her.
Put their words into Slovene.

1 Sergej told her to study more.
2 Boštjan told her not to work this summer.
3 Davor told her not to mix with Sandra.

Sabina gave sharp answers to each of them. Put into reported speech what she said:

1 brigati se za sebe to mind one's own business
2 poizkati si to find (something for oneself)

Exercise 13

A colleague of yours, Monika Černe, telephones one morning and you answer the telephone. She says:


Can you go to the director and tell him in your own words what she told you?

Exercise 14

The words on the left are things and people. Match them with the places on the right where you could find them.

avto restavracija
omara gostilna
receptor garaža
Exercise 15

Pronunciation exercise. The Slovene j is always pronounced as in the English words ‘yes’, and ‘yellow’ and not as the French j.

Let's pronounce the following words: junij, julij, jug, dežuše, ključ, knjiga.

J is also pronounced in country names, e.g. Anglija, Slovenija, Španija, Italija; and in people's names: Marija, Katja, Manja, Tanja, Sonja.

Dialogue for comprehension

On the way to the house Sabina suggested that Robert should tell the boys about a hotel where he once stayed. Make a list of all the things that went wrong there.

- kakor hitro as soon as
- tuširati se to have a shower
- teči to run

ROBERT: Upam, da bo ta privatna hiša boljša od tiste, kjer sem lani enkrat prenociš.

SERGEJ: Kaj je bilo narobe?


SERGEJ: Zakaj niste šli tudi vi v tisto gostilno?

ROBERT: Jaz sem ves dan delal in zvečer sem bil utrjen. Hotel sem se odpočit. In tudi moji prijatelji so bili utrujeni.
13 Vse najboljše za rojstni dan!
Happy birthday!

In this lesson you will learn about:
- How to use the instrumental case
- How to compare adjectives and adverbs
- Personal and national celebrations

Dialogue 1 🌈

Kje je darilo za Roberta?
Where is the present for Robert?

Robert did not realize that the reason they wanted to go to lake Bled was because they had discovered that Saturday was his birthday. Sabina knew that he would come to the hotel and it was she who was organizing the party at Sandra's parents' house at lake Bled, the house where she had suggested they should stay. She and Sandra are just getting the last things ready before the guests arrive.

SABINA: Upam, da ne bodo prišli pred osmo. Kje je darilo za Roberta? Zaviti ga je treba!
SABINA: Dobro, jaz pa bom med tem pripravila mizo.
SANDRA: Miza je že pripravljena, samo kozare še manjkajo. Nisem jih našla.
SABINA: Morali bi biti v eni škatli v dnevni sobi.
SANDRA: Tja nisem pogledala.
SABINA: Jaz bom šla po njih.
SANDRA: Ali pridejo z avtom, ali s takšijem?

SABINA: Pojma nimam. Sergej je samo rekel, da naj bodo prej poklicali.
SANDRA: Če se bodo spomnili!
SABINA: I hope they won't come before eight. Where is the present for Robert? We must wrap it.
SANDRA: It's under these papers. I'll wrap it.
SABINA: Alright. I'll prepare the table in the meantime.
SANDRA: The table is prepared, only the glasses are missing. I couldn't find them.
SABINA: They should be in a box in the living-room.
SANDRA: I didn't look there.
SABINA: I'll fetch them.
SANDRA: Are they coming by car or by taxi?
SABINA: I haven't a clue. Sergej only said that they will give us a ring before to warn us.
SANDRA: If they remember!

Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pred</th>
<th>before</th>
<th>manjkati</th>
<th>to be missing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>darilo</td>
<td>present</td>
<td>škatla</td>
<td>box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zaviti</td>
<td>to wrap</td>
<td>pojma nimam</td>
<td>I haven't a clue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>med tem</td>
<td>in the meantime</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Language points

I hope so, I think so

When you want to tell someone that you hope or think something, you must make a relative clause, for example:

Upam, da bo jutri lepo vreme! I hope the weather will be nice tomorrow.
Upam, da ne bo deževalo! I hope it won't rain.
Mislim, da pridejo vsi! I think they're all coming.
Mislim, da so bili včeraj v kinu. I think they were in the cinema yesterday.

If you want to say that you hope or think so, you say:
Something is missing!

The verb manjkati means 'to be missing'. When you want to say that something or someone is missing you use this verb in the third
person singular. Keep in mind that the present continuous tense
does not exist in Slovene and you must therefore not translate the
English auxiliary 'is'. For example, you say:

Nekaj/nedko manjka!  Something/someone is missing!
Kdo/kaj manjka?  Who/what is missing?
Manjka mi časa/denarja.  I'm short of time/money.

I haven't a clue!

As in English, there are several colloquial expressions for saying
'I don't know'. Notice how Sabina says in the dialogue Nimam
pojma!, meaning 'I have no idea'.

Here are a few more expressions which you may hear people say:

Sanja se mi ne!  I don't even dream about it!
Nimam blage veze!  I have no idea!
Nimam ideje!  I have no idea!
Nimam pojma!  I haven't a clue!

Will you remember?

The words for 'to remind' and 'to remember' are another example
of how in Slovene, when you change a prefix or when a verb is
reflexive, it has a different meaning. Look at these examples:

Ali se spomnis?  Do you remember?
Ne, ne spomnim se.  No, I don't remember.
Sponmi me!  Remember me!
Ne morem si zapomniti!  I can't remember.
Zapomniti si!  Remember!

The verb spomniti when used with an object, as in 'Sponmi me!' means 'to remind'. Spomniti se, as in Ali se spomnis? or Ne
spomnimsel, means 'to remember'. Zapomniti si also means 'to
remember', as in Ne morem si zapomniti!

The instrumental case

Like the locative case, the instrumental case is used as the object
of certain prepositions. It is called instrumental case because it is
used when you name an instrument by means of which a partic-
ular action is carried out. Look back at lesson 3, where you learnt
how to use this case with the means of transport. The prepositions
which are followed by the instrumental case are listed below:

s/z
Both of the above prepositions mean 'with', 'by means of'. The
preposition s is used before all unvoiced consonants, which are: ć,
č, ď, ę, ļ, k, p and t.
The preposition z is used before all vowels (a, e, i, u, u) and all
voiced consonants (b, d, g, j, l, m, n, r, v, z, ž). For example:

z roko  by hand
z avtobusom  by bus
z vlakom  by train
z mano  with me
s knjigo  with (a/the) book
s profesorjem  with (a/the) professor
s Sabino  with Sabina
s tabo  with you

nad (over, above): Nad nami je še eno stanovanje (There is
another flat above us).
pod (under): Nekaj je pod mizo (Something is under the table).
med (during, between, among): Med nami je zmeraj tako
(Among us it is always like that).
za (behind, beyond, after): Nekdo je za vrati (Someone is behind
the door); Za zimo pride pomlad (After winter comes spring).
pred (in front of, before): Cigav avto stoji pred hišo? (Whose
ear is in front of the house?).

The endings in the instrumental case are as follows:
The first and the second declension (feminine nouns)
Feminine nouns take an o ending in the singular, an ama ending in
the dual and an ami ending in the plural.
There are quite a few exceptions to this rule among the nouns of the second declension.

The third and the fourth declension (masculine and neuter nouns)
Masculine and neuter nouns take an om or em ending in the singular, an oma or ema ending in the dual and an i ending in the plural.

Personal pronouns in the instrumental case

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>z mano</td>
<td>z nama</td>
<td>z nami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s tabo</td>
<td>z vama</td>
<td>z vami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z njim</td>
<td>z njima</td>
<td>z njimi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z njo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z njim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The prepositions s and z are used above. They can be replaced by other prepositions used with the instrumental case.
The interrogative pronouns in the instrumental case are S kom (with whom) and S čim (with what).

Exercise 1

Answer these questions relating to dialogue 1. Some information you are asked is not given in the dialogue, in which case you answer that you don’t know.

1. Kdo bo zavil darilo za Roberta?
2. Zakaj Sandra ni postavila kozarcev na mizo?
3. Kaj sta Sandra in Sabina kupili Robertu?
4. Kje so kozarci?
5. Ali bo Sergej telefoniral, preden pridejo?

Exercise 2

How would you tell someone the following?
1. that you can’t remember how much you paid for that book.
2. that you can’t remember what your secretary’s surname is.
3. to remind you to telephone your mother.
4. to remind you to go to the bank.
5. that you can’t remember how to say this in Slovene.

Exercise 3

How would you answer the questions below (use the clues in brackets)?

| na spreho | for a walk |

1. Kje si parkiral avto?
   (in front of the house)
2. Kako si šel v službo?
   (by train)
3. Ali si zamenjal denar?
   (Yes, I went to the bank during my break.)
4. Kdaj prideš jutri domov?
   (not before six)
5. Psam moram peljati na spreho.
   (I’ll come with you.)

Exercise 4

From the conversation between Sandra and Sabina, say what they bought Robert and why.

SANDRA: Ali misliš, da mu bo ta knjiga vseč?
SABINA: Ne vem. Kupila sem jo zato, ker je enkrat omenil, da rad kuha.
SANDRA: Amapak v tej knjigi so same solate!
SABINA: Ali ne veš, Robert je vegetarjanec!
Vocabulary

obleči — to wear
obleka — dress, suit
poizkusiti — to try
krilo — skirt
sicer — namely
bluza — blouse
blače — trousers
pulover — pullover
katerega? — which one?
nositi — to carry, to wear

Language points

Shopping for clothes

Browsing around clothes shops, you will be approached by a shop-assistant. You can tell them:

Samo gledam, hvala. — I'm just looking, thank you.
Iščem ... — I'm looking for ...
Ali lahko pomerim ...? — May I try ...?
A shop-assistant may ask you:

Katerega številko želite? — What size would you like?
V kakšni barvi želite to ... — In what colour would you like this ...?

If you are lucky, you can find things

na razprodaji — in a sale
po znižani cenih — reduced
po polovični cenih — half price
You may find it confusing, but *obleka* means both a dress for a woman and a suit for a man. Here are some more words for items of clothing:

- sandali: sandals
- škorji: boot
- šal: scarf
- rokavice: gloves
- majica: T-shirt, vest
- spodnje perilo: underwear
- nogavice: socks
- kravata: tie

**Nositi**

The verb nositi (nosim) means 'to carry', as in:

*Kaj nosiš v tej veliki torbi?* What are you carrying in this big bag?

*Nositi* can also mean 'to wear', as in:

- Najraje nosim hlače. I like wearing trousers best.
- Poleti nosim križa. I wear skirts in the summer.

You also use *nositi* to say that you wear spectacles, as in:

- očala: spectacles
  
  *Ali nosiš očala?* Do you wear spectacles?
  
  *Ja, slabo vidim. Že dolgo jih nosim.* Yes, I see badly. I've been wearing them for a long time.

**Comparison of adjectives and adverbs**

The three degrees of comparison are:

1. the positive
2. the comparative
3. the superlative

When you want to compare adjectives or adverbs in English you either add '-er' and '-est' to the adjective (as in 'cheap, cheaper, the cheapest') or you add 'more' and 'most' in front of them (as in 'expensive, more expensive, the most expensive'). A similar, but not identical method, is used in Slovene.

To form the comparative in Slovene you add the following suffixes to the positive: *-si, -ji, -jši*.

To form the superlative you simply put *naj* in front of the comparative. Look at the following examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lep</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>lepši</td>
<td>najlepši</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mlad</td>
<td>young</td>
<td>mlajši</td>
<td>najmlajši</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kratek</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>krajiši</td>
<td>najkrajiši</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slab</td>
<td>bad</td>
<td>slabši</td>
<td>najslabši</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolg</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>daljiši</td>
<td>najdaljiši</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drag</td>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>dražji</td>
<td>najdražji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visok</td>
<td>high</td>
<td>višji</td>
<td>najvišji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velik</td>
<td>big</td>
<td>večji</td>
<td>največji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lahek</td>
<td>easy</td>
<td>lažji</td>
<td>najlažji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nov</td>
<td>new</td>
<td>nuvejši</td>
<td>najnuvejši</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>star</td>
<td>old</td>
<td>starejši</td>
<td>najstarejši</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bogat</td>
<td>rich</td>
<td>bogatejši</td>
<td>najbogatejši</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revent</td>
<td>poor</td>
<td>revnejši</td>
<td>najrevnejši</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rjav</td>
<td>brown</td>
<td>bolj rjav</td>
<td>najbolj rjav</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jezen</td>
<td>angry</td>
<td>bolj jezen</td>
<td>najbolj jezen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>razočaran</td>
<td>disappointed</td>
<td>bolj razočaran</td>
<td>najbolj razočaran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zaskrbljen</td>
<td>worried</td>
<td>bolj zaskrbljen</td>
<td>najbolj zaskrbljen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Which suffix is added and how some adjectives alter or shorten when the suffix has been added must be memorized.

The comparative can also be formed with the word *bolj* (more) and the superlative with the word *najbolj* (the most), for example:

- *rjav* | brown | bolj rjav | najbolj rjav
- *jezen* | angry | bolj jezen | najbolj jezen
- *razočaran* | disappointed | bolj razočaran | najbolj razočaran
- *zaskrbljen* | worried | bolj zaskrbljen | najbolj zaskrbljen

The endings *-si, -ji and -jši* are added only when an adjective denotes the quality of something. All other adjectives form their comparative and superlative with the helping word *bolj* and *najbolj*.

When you compare things you use the following conjunction words:

- *in*
The positive
Anglija je tako velika kot Italija. England is as big as Italy.

The comparative
Anglija je večja kot Slovenija. England is bigger than Slovenia.

The superlative
amerika je največja izmed teh držav. America is the biggest of all these countries.

Notice that the endings of nouns change depending on which preposition you use. The endings of adjectives in their comparative and superlative forms also change.

Comparison of adverbs
You know that the neuter form of an adjective is also an adverb. They usually end in o (dobra, veliko, lepo). Adverbs are words which you don't decline. They can tell us location (kam, doma, domov), manner (hitro, počasi), reason (zato). You have already learned how you compare the adverbs dobré and rad. Here are some more adverbs and their comparative and superlative forms.

| velikn | a lot | vec | najvec |
| zelo | very | bolj | najbolj |
| malo | a little | manj | najmanj |
| dalec | far | dlje | najdlje |
| blizu | close by | bliže | najblije |

More about the conjunction words
In Slovene there are two types of conjunction words: coordinate and subordinate. Coordinate conjunctions can express:

Supplement: these tell us that there is something else, for example: Davor in Sergej. Other words which can express supplement are pa, meaning 'and'. Pa is used more colloquially. The word ter is used as the last conjunction when you are listing things, for example: Kupil je kruh, krompir, sol, poper ter masto.

Choice: ali ... ali meaning 'either ... or' expresses a choice. Ali on its own, meaning 'or', also expresses a choice.

Opposition: we have very often used the word ampak; its synonyms are toda, a, vendar.

Degree: ne ... ne, or niti ... niti mean 'neither ... nor'. The words ne samo ... ampak tudi ... mean 'not only ... but also'.

Cause: there are a few words with which you can express cause. Among the common ones are namreč (namely), sicer (or else), kajti (for). Here is an example: Pohiti, sicer bozamudil avtobus!

Subordinate conjunctions introduce a subordinate clause. The conjunction da (that) introduces almost all types of subordinate clauses. The words ki, kateri, kdor, kar are all translated by 'which' and introduce a subordinate clause. Other subordinate conjunctions express:

time: kadar, ku (when)
condition: če (if)
cause: ker, zato ker (because)
comparison, as you have seen above.

Exercise 6
Match the Slovene words with the English ones:

| hlače | tie |
| bluza | skirt |
| kravata | scarf |
| krito | shoes |
| čevlji | blouse |
| rokavice | trousers |
| šal | gloves |

Exercise 7
Ask your friend which she prefers wearing:

| kostim | suit (for a woman) |
| leče | contact lenses |

1: shoes or sandals
2: blouses or pullovers
3: skirts or trousers
4: dresses or suits
5: glasses or contact lenses
Exercise 8

You are walking round town and you see some nice things in a window (v izložbi). You enter the shop and you are approached by a shop-assistant. Fill in your part of the conversation.

Prodažalka: Želite, prosim?
You: 1 Tell her that you are just looking.
Prodažalka: Sedaj imamo razprodajo. Vse je po polovični ceni.
You: 2 Tell her that you are looking for a jumper for your brother.
Prodažalka: Katero številko želite?
You: 3 Tell her that you don't know. Ask if you could see some men's jumpers.
Prodažalka: Kakšne harve ga želite?
You: 4 Say in blue or in brown.
Prodažalka: Na žalost imamo samo še male številke. Veliko je že razprodano.
You: 5 Thank her and say that you will have a look somewhere else.

Exercise 9

Fill in the comparative of the suggested adjectives and adverbs in the sentences below. The adjectives in brackets are all in the masculine form. Keep in mind that these will have different endings depending on the gender of the noun.

1 Ali je tvoje novo stanovanje ... ali ... od prejšnjega? (small, big)
2 Ali je ta hotel ... ali ... od jezera? (close, far)
3 Ali je tvoja nova služba ... ali ... ? (good, bad)
4 Ali je v tej trgovini zelenjava ... ali ... ? (cheap, expensive)
5 Ali si bil lani ... ali ... ? (rich, poor)

Exercise 10

Robert asks Davor a few questions about lake Bled. Fill in his part of the conversation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>globok</th>
<th>deep</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>svet</td>
<td>world</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Robert: 1 Is lake Bled the largest lake in Slovenia?
Davor: Ne vem, mislim da.
Robert: 2 Is it the most beautiful one?
Robert: 3 If it isn't far we could go there one day. I like lakes. I always wanted to see lake Baikal. That is the deepest lake. It is also the coldest.
Davor: Jaz sem misil, da je Loch Ness najglobje jezero?
Robert: 4 No, Loch Ness is the deepest and the longest lake in Scotland but not in the world.

Dialogue 3

Na zdravje!

Cheers!

People have already begun to arrive at the party. As Robert and the students enter the house they all sing happy birthday to him.

Robert: Ne vem, kaj naj rečem.
Sergej: Nič ne reci! Sedi in vzemi svoj kozarec! Danes je tvoj rojstni dan!
Sandra: Počakaj, počakaj, Sergej! Robert, ali nam boš povedal, koliko si danes star?
Robert: Morala boš malo počakati, Sandra. Najprej bom nekaj popit!
Sergej: Kje je vino?
Sandra: Tukaj!
Sergej: Robert, to je najboljše slovensko vino. Ampak preden je zares dobro, moraš popiti nekaj kozarec!
Robert: Hvala. Hvala vsem! Na zdravje!
Robert: I don't know what to say!
Sergej: Don't say anything! Sit down and take your glass! It's your birthday!
Sandra: Hold on, Sergej! Robert, will you tell us how old you are today?
Robert: You'll have to wait a bit, Sandra. I'll have something to drink first!
Sergej: Where is the wine?
Sandra: Here!
Sergej: Robert, this is the best Slovene wine! But you have to drink a few glasses before it becomes really good!
Robert: Thank you. Thank you all! Cheers!

Language points
Birthday cards
Robert received quite a few cards for his birthday. Here are some examples showing you how to write a birthday card:
Vse najboljše za tvoj rojstni dan All the best on your birthday.
Sabina in Sandra
Vse najboljše, Robert! All the best, Robert!
Sergej, Davor, Boštjan
K tvojemu rojstnemu dnevu ti želimo vse najboljše We wish you all the best on your birthday.
Družina Koren
Vse najboljše means 'All the best'.

Describing a person
You should by now be able to describe a person’s physical appearance; here are some more words you can use, some of which are for when you want to describe someone's character:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>značaj</td>
<td>character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postava</td>
<td>figure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Slovene, you can describe someone by saying that they have some of the above characteristics, in which case the nouns will be in the accusative case; or that they are of the above characteristics, in which case the nouns will be in the genitive case, for example:

Davor ima lep značaj. Davor has a nice character.
Davor je lepega značaja. Davor is of a nice character.
Sandra ima temno polt. Sandra has a dark complexion.
Sandra je temne polti. Sandra is of a dark complexion.

Personal celebrations
Most people celebrate their birthday (rojstni dan). The fiftieth birthday is the biggest celebration; you are celebrating abrahama then. Other important celebrations are:

Matura: You have a 'matura dance' when you finish your secondary education, at the age of eighteen or nineteen.
Diploma: This is when you graduate.
Zaroka: 'engagement': most people give a party when they get engaged.
Poroka 'wedding'.
Srebrna poroka (literally 'a silver wedding'): this is an occasion to celebrate – you've been married for twenty-five years.
Zlata poroka (literally 'a golden wedding'): you've been married for fifty years.
Krst 'christening'.

Not a celebration but another event when a family gets together is pogreb (funeral).

What do Slovenes celebrate?

'A national holiday' is državni praznik. Together with those, there are a few other days in the year which Slovenes celebrate:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>date</th>
<th>name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31 December</td>
<td>silvestrovo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 January</td>
<td>novo leto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 February</td>
<td>Prešernov dan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is a Slovene day of culture, a day when the greatest Slovene poet, France Prešeren, was born.
Spelling in Slovene

You know that the days of the week and the months of the year are spelt with a small letter in Slovene. The national holidays, likewise, are spelt with a small letter, unless, of course, they appear at the beginning of a sentence. Inhabitants of countries are spelt with a capital letter (e.g. Anglež, Slovenka), but the languages are spelt with a small letter (e.g. Govorim angleško/slovensko).

More about dates

The question Katerega smo danes? (What date is it today?) can be answered in two ways: you know that you can say Danes je ...; however, it is much more common to say Danes smo ..., in which case the numbers will take the genitive ending. Look at the example:

25.4.
Danes je petindvajseti četrti
Danes smo petindvajsetega četrtega

Exercise 12

Which verb do you think would fit best in the sentences below?
1 Tone zelo rad ... zanimive knjige.
2 Njegova mama je učiteljica ... matematiko in fiziko.
3 Letos si moram ... nov plač.
4 Ali ... očala?
5 Naslednji teden ... na poroko. Ne vem, kaj naj ...

Exercise 13

Fill in the personal pronouns in the gaps in the sentences below:
1 Jaz ne poznam Sabine. Ali ... ti poznaš?
2 Telefonirati moram Matjažu. Nekaj ... moram vprašati.
3 Peter mi je že pred dvema mesecema posodil to knjigo, ampak nisem ... že prehral.
4 Grešk k Borisu. Nekaj ... moram povedati.
5 Kje je darilo? Zaviti ... je treba.
6 Ali poznaš Simonom?
   Ja, poznam ..., ampak ... dolgo ... nisem videl.

Exercise 14

Change the meaning of the sentences below by replacing the word in italics with its opposite meaning:
1 Danes sem dobri volje.
2 Priži radio!
3 Ali je danes pošta zaprta?
4 Ta restavracija je zelo daleč, in draga je.
5 Zelo slabo govoriš slovensko.
6 Ta avtobus vozi hitro in nikoli nima zamude.

Exercise 15

Pronunciation exercise. You know that s and z are prepositions, both meaning `with'. You use s before nouns which start with unvoiced consonants (these are c, č, s, š, f, h, k, p, t) and z before nouns which start with a vowel (a, e, i, o, u) or with a voiced consonant (these are b, d, g, j, l, m, n, r, v, z, ž).

Here are some sentences using these prepositions. Read them out...
Ali prideš z mano, ali greš z njo?
S tabo pridel.
Ali bi čaj z limono?
Ne, čaj z mlekom bom.
Ali si zadovoljen z novo službo?
Rad jem salato s kisom in oljem.
Najraje pišem s svinčnikom.
Ali hi sok z ledom?

Dialogue for comprehension

Robert comes down to breakfast the next day at 10:30 and makes himself some black coffee. He has a headache. As he is recovering, Sergej and Davor come downstairs, looking even worse. Robert asks them a bit about Slovene celebrations. Why did they think Robert's birthday was special?

ROBERT: Ali vse rojstne dneve tako praznujete?
SERGEJ: Ne, tvoj rojstni dan je bil poschen.
ROBERT: Zakaj?
SERGEJ: Zato, ker boš kmalu šel nazaj v Anglijo. Ne moremo čakati na tvoj petdeseti rojstni dan, zaroko ali poroko.
ROBERT: Ali v Sloveniji praznujete državne praznike?
SERGEJ: Ja, ampak če ni nobena... Tvoj rojstni dan je prišel zares v pravem času!
ROBERT: In kaj, če nima nihče rojstnega dneva?
SERGEJ: O, mi zmeraj najdemo kakšen vzrok za praznovanje.

Reference grammar

Adjectives

Since adjectives qualify nouns they also have three gender endings. The same applies to possessive pronouns (e.g. his, her) - they must agree with the noun in gender, case and number. For example:

m. dober dan  
good day
f. dobra večerja  
good supper
n. dobro jutro  
good morning

Adverbs

In Slovene the neuter form of an adjective is also an adverb, for example: Dobro kuhaš! (You cook well!).

There are adverbs which never change their form, for example blizu (close by), daleč, (far away), zelo (very), prvič (for the first time), and so on.

Article

Slovene has no article, neither indefinite (English 'a') nor definite (English 'the').

Cases

Words in sentences or expressions stand in a relationship which is determined by the meaning we want to put across. In English this
relationship is indicated by word order and prepositions whilst in Slovene it is indicated by case endings.

In the Slovene language there are six cases, each of them having a particular function. The nouns and other parts of the sentence which qualify them change with their function in a sentence.

The cases are:
1. nominative (imenovalnik) (see lesson 2);
2. genitive (rodilnik) (see lesson 9);
3. dative (dajalnik) (see lesson 6);
4. accusative (tožilnik) (see lesson 5);
5. locative (mestnik) (see lessons 6, 12);
6. instrumental (orodnik) (see lessons 3, 13).

**Comparison**

There are two ways of forming comparatives and superlatives of adjectives and adverbs:
1. The comparative is formed with suffixes -ejši, -ši and -ji, depending on the adjective. Superlatives in this case are formed by adding the prefix naj to the comparative.
   - hiter: hitrejši, najhitrejši
   - slah: slabši, najslabši
2. With bolj (more) and najbolj (the most) placed in front of the adjective or the adverb:
   - rjav: bolj rjav, najbolj rjav
   - razočaran: bolj razočaran, najbolj razočaran

(see lesson 13)

**Conjunction words**

There are two types of conjunction in Slovene: coordinate and subordinate. Among the most commonly used coordinate conjunctions are in (and), ampak (but), ali...ali (either...or), se samo ...ampak tudi (not only...but also).

Subordinate conjunctions always introduce a subordinate clause. The conjunction da (that) introduces almost all types of subordinate clause. Some others are če (if), kadar, ko (when).

(see lesson 13)

**Declensions**

All Slovene nouns are divided into four groups called declensions. They are:

1. *First declension*: into this group come nouns of feminine gender ending in a.
2. *Second declension*: into this group come nouns of feminine gender ending in a consonant.
3. *Third declension*: into this group come nouns of masculine gender.
4. *Fourth declension*: into this group come nouns of neuter gender.

All Slovene nouns can be declined in the singular, dual and plural.

**Demonstrative pronouns**

There are three types of demonstrative pronoun in Slovene:
1. Ta, ta, to
2. tisti, tista, tisto (for things which are a little further away);
3. oni, ona, ono (for things which are very far away).
4. Tolik/-al-o (indicates a quality).
5. Točlj/-al-o (indicates quantity).

(see lesson 11)

**Gender of nouns**

Unlike English, the Slovene language distinguishes three genders: masculine, feminine and neuter. Masculine gender refers to male persons and most male animals; and female gender refers to female persons and most female animals. The gender of other inanimate objects and abstract nouns must be memorized. The endings in the nominative singular can be helpful in determining the gender:
1. Nouns ending in a are usually feminine;
2. Nouns ending in e or o are usually neuter;
3. Nouns ending in a consonant are either masculine or neuter.

(see lesson 1)
Interrogative pronouns ‘who’ and ‘what’

The interrogative pronouns kdo? (who?) and kaj? (what?) are declined in all six cases as follows:

1 kdo or kaj;
2 koga or česa;
3 komu or čemu;
4 koga or kaj;
5 pri kom or pri čem;
6 s kom or s čim.

Number

Nouns, adjectives and pronouns have different number forms. Unlike most languages, Slovene has, beside the singular and plural, dual forms.

Dual is an ancient Slavic form which has been lost in most languages but is still in use in Slovene. All Slovene nouns, verbs and pronouns have, in addition to the singular and the plural, the dual form, which is used when one talks about two things or two people. This increases the number of Slovene grammatical forms enormously.

Whilst in English you use the plural ‘we’, when you mean two people you need to use the dual form ‘the two of us’ in Slovene. In other words, Slovene has:

- singular form (one person or one thing);
- dual form (two people or two things) (see lesson 5);
- plural form (more than two people or things).

Personal pronouns

When personal pronouns are the subject of a sentence they can be omitted because the ending of the verb indicates the person. In Slovene they are declined in the singular, dual and plural in six cases as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaz</td>
<td>mene</td>
<td>meni</td>
<td>mene</td>
<td>pri meni</td>
<td>z mano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ti</td>
<td>tebe</td>
<td>tebi</td>
<td>tebe</td>
<td>pri tebi</td>
<td>s tabo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>njega</td>
<td>njemu</td>
<td>njega</td>
<td>pri njemu</td>
<td>z njim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ona</td>
<td>nje</td>
<td>njej</td>
<td>njo</td>
<td>pri njej</td>
<td>z no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ono</td>
<td>njega</td>
<td>njemu</td>
<td>njega</td>
<td>pri njemu</td>
<td>z njim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>midva</td>
<td>naju</td>
<td>nama</td>
<td>naju</td>
<td>pri nama</td>
<td>z nama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidva</td>
<td>vaju</td>
<td>vama</td>
<td>vaju</td>
<td>pri vaju</td>
<td>z vama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onadva</td>
<td>njiju</td>
<td>njima</td>
<td>njiju</td>
<td>pri njiju</td>
<td>z njima</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mi</td>
<td>nas</td>
<td>nam</td>
<td>nas</td>
<td>pri nas</td>
<td>z nami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi</td>
<td>vas</td>
<td>vam</td>
<td>vas</td>
<td>pri vas</td>
<td>z vami</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oni</td>
<td>njih</td>
<td>njim</td>
<td>njih</td>
<td>pri njih</td>
<td>z njimi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prepositions

Prepositions are words (such as ‘to’, ‘from’, ‘without’) which govern nouns or pronouns and adjectives modifying them. Particular prepositions are used in specific cases, with few exceptions, as follows:

Genitive: brez (without), nd (of, since, from), do (to, until, as far as), mimo (past, by), zaradi (because of), nkJoli (about, around), blizu (close by), sredi (in the middle of), iz (from, of, out of), izza (from behind), izpod (from below), iznad (from above).

Dative: k/h (to), kljub (in spite of), proti (towards, to, against).

Accusative: čez (across, over), med (between, among), skozi (through). The prepositions po (for), v (in, to), na (on, upon, at, in), ob (at, on), za (for), pred (before, in front of), pod (under, below), nad (above, over) are used with the accusative case when they express an aim or a direction.

Locative: pri (at, hy, near), o (about, at, on). The prepositions na, ob, po and v are used with the locative case unless they express an aim or a direction.
Instrumental: z/ (with, by means of). The prepositions za, nad, pod, pred and med are used with the instrumental case when they mean time.

Reporting speech

What someone originally said is usually reported with reči, povedati, vprašati. When reporting what other people have said you use the same tense as was used in the original statement. The only change is that of the personal pronoun.

(see lesson 12)

Sentence patterns

Forming questions

Questions in Slovene are formed:

1 With the question word ali, which is used in all tenses and for all persons:
   Ali si danes doma? (present tense)
   Ali je bil včeraj doma? (past tense)
   Ali boste jutri doma? (future tense)

2 With interrogative pronouns. Some commonly used interrogative pronouns are:

   kdo  who
   kaj  what (see interrogative pronouns 'who' and 'what')
   kam  where
   kje  where
   kateri  which, which one
   kakn  how
   koliko  how much, how many
   kakšen  what kind of
   čigav  whose
   od kôd, iz kôd  from where

3 By the intonation of your voice: e.g. Danes si doma?

Negative statements

Apart from the three verbs which form their negative in the present tense in one word (nisem, nimam, nočem,) you negate a present-tense statement by putting ne in front of the verb: ne vam (I don't know), ne vidim (I don't see).

In the past tense you negate a statement with the negative form of the auxiliary 'to be' and the participle in t: nisem vedel (I didn't know), nisem videk (I didn't see).

In the future tense you negate a statement by putting ne in front of the auxiliary 'to be' in the future tense and the participle in t: ne bom vedel (I won't know), ne bom videk (I won't see).

Double negative: the double negative is used in Slovene. This means that negative words such as 'never' and 'nothing' require a negative verb, for example:

Še nikoli nisem bil tukaj.  I've never been here before.

Word order

By and large, word order is fairly flexible in Slovene. Because of the case and verb endings it means that you cannot get the meaning of the sentence wrong. There are, however, some rules.

Especially where unstressed words (enclitics) are used, the word order changes; enclitics can never stand at the beginning of a sentence.

The verb

The principal verbal forms in Slovene are the infinitive and the present tense of the first person singular ending in m. From them all other verbal forms are derived.

Biti (to be)

As in most languages the verb 'to be' is irregular. It is best to learn it by heart so that you can recognize and recall the form you need at all times.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive form</th>
<th>Negative form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>jaz sem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ti si</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>on je</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Verbal noun**

The Slovene verbal nouns correspond to English nouns ending in '-ing' ('writing, singing'). Most of the Slovene verbal nouns are formed by dropping the ti ending from the infinitive and adding nje. For example:

- kaditi → kajenje
- pisati → pisanje

(see lesson 11)

**Verbal aspect: perfective and imperfective verbs**

Perfective verbs usually mean a beginning or an end of an action, whilst imperfective verbs indicate a repeated or a continuous action. Perfective verbs are formed by changing the suffix of the imperfective verb (for example, kupovati - kupiti) or by dropping the prefix (for example, odpotovati - potovati). Some Slovene verbs have either only the perfective or only the imperfective form but most verbs appear in both forms.

(see lessons 8, 9)

**Tenses**

Slovene has four tenses:

1. present tense;
2. past tense;
3. future tense;
4. pluperfect tense.

**Present tense**: The present tense, together with the infinitive, is the main verbal form in Slovene. All other verbal forms are derived from these. The verb endings in the present tense are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 jaz delam</td>
<td>midva delava</td>
<td>mi delamo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 ti delam</td>
<td>vidva delata</td>
<td>vi delate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 on delam (no ending, only stem)</td>
<td>onadva delata</td>
<td>oni delamo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past tense**: The past tense is formed with the present tense of the
verb 'to be' and the participle in I. (see lesson 7)

*Future tense:* The future tense is formed with the future tense of the verb 'to be' and the past active participle. The forms of the verb 'to be' in the future are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jaz bom</td>
<td>midva bova</td>
<td>mi homo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ti boš</td>
<td>vidva bosta</td>
<td>vi boste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on bo</td>
<td>onadva bosta</td>
<td>oni bodo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(see lesson 8)

*Pluperfect tense:* the pluperfect tense exists in Slovene but it is not used in spoken Slovene. We have not looked into how it is formed in this book.

*Mood*

Mood is a term applied to verbs. Slovene has three moods:

1. **Indicative**, which expresses a fact in whichever tense.
2. **Imperative**, which expresses a command, advice, a wish. The imperative is formed from the present tense of the verb by dropping the m or im ending from the first person singular and adding different forms for different persons.

(see lesson 4)

3. **Conditional**, which expresses a hypothesis, e.g. something that might have happened. The conditional is formed with the word bi, which remains the same for all persons and numbers, and the participle in I.

(see lesson 10)

*Voice*

The term voice applies to verbs. Slovene has two voices: active and passive. The subject of an active verb is the noun which carries out the action, e.g. *Kuham kosilo* (I'm cooking a lunch), where the subject is shown in the verb ending. In the passive the subject receives the action, e.g. *Kosilo je kuhano* (*The lunch is cooked*). This is an example where you do use the passive in Slovene, but on the whole the passive is rarely used.

(see lesson 7)
There is a variety of exercises in this book. Model answers are given below. In certain instances, such as when you are asked to construct an answer to a question, there is no single correct answer. It follows that in such cases an answer that differs from the model is not necessarily wrong.

**Lesson 1**


2. 1 Dobre jutro. 2 Na svidanje. 3 Živio! 4 Lahko noč. 5 Dober dan. 6 Dober večer. 7 Lahko noč.


4. 1 Ja, on je utrujen. 2 Ja, ona je v Angliji. 3 Ja, ona je v Sloveniji. 4 Ja, mi smo danes doma.

**5**

si; dobro, ti; hvala, v; je; v.

**6**

1 je; 2 je; 3 smo; 4 sem; 5 je; 6 sem.

**7**

To je moja žena. To je Robert. To je moj prijatelj. To je gospod Koren. To je moj mož.

**8** (translation of the statements)

1 I'm a bit tired today. 2 My wife is in Germany. 3 I am in England. 4 I'm not at work today. 5 I'm very busy today.

**9**


**10**


**11**

1 a; 2 a; 3 b; 4 a; 5 h.

**12** (translation of the questions)

1 Are you in England? 2 Is your wife in Slovenia? 3 Are you tired today? 4 Are you at work? 5 Are you at home this evening?

**13**

1 d; 2 a; 3 b; 4 c; 5 e.
Translation of the dialogue for comprehension

Mr Stopar: Hello, Robert. How are you?
Robert: I'm fine. And you?
Mr Stopar: Oh, I'm not very well today. I'm very tired. Please come in.
Robert: Thank you very much.
Mr Stopar: Robert, this is my wife.
Mrs Stopar: Nice to meet you Robert.
Mr Stopar: And this is my friend, Tomaz Rataj.
Tomaz Rataj: Hello, Robert. How are things going? Is your girlfriend here?
Robert: No, she isn't here.
Tomaz Rataj: Is she in Ljubljana?
Robert: No she isn't in Slovenia. She is in England. Is your wife here?
Tomaz Rataj: No, she is not. She is at work today.
Robert: Is she in Ljubljana?
Tomaz Rataj: Yes, she is at work at the Brnik airport. I also work at the Brnik airport but I am at home today. I am very tired.
Robert: Oh, we're all very tired today.

Lesson 2

1

Tuesday - torek; on Saturday - v soboto; Wednesday - sreda; on Sundays - ob nedeljah; Friday - petek; Monday - ponedeljek.

2

9
1 Darko, ali si v torek zvečer doma? 2 Lara, ali si v četrtek zvečer doma? 3 Peter, ali si v ponedeljek zvečer doma? 4 Darja, ali si v soboto zvečer doma? 5 Nataša, ali si v petek zvečer doma?

10
imaš; nimam; sem; imam; sem; je; je.

11
1 Ja, Tim ima prav. 2 Ne, ona nima srcde. 3 Ne, danes zvečer nimam da da. 4 Ja, to je res.

12
1 To je nemogoče. 2 To ni res. 3 Ampak to je zelo pomembno.

13
majhen avto; dobro jutro; lepa hiša; veliko mesto; težka lekeija; slabo vreme.

14
Španka Slovenec sreda Anglija policija
Francozinja Anglež ponedeljek Francija gasilci
Slovenka Franco sobota Nemčija pomoč na cesti
Nemka Američan četrtek Rusija prva pomoč

Translation of the dialogue for comprehension

SECRETARY: Hello?
DENIS: Good day, Denis Golob speaking. Is Matej Novak there?
SECRETARY: Just a moment, please.
MATEJ: Hello?
DENIS: Hello Matej, Denis here.
MATEJ: Oh, you're back, how are you?
DENIS: Excellent. And how are you?

MATEJ: I'm very busy. I have a lot to do at work and Robert is here in Slovenia.
DENIS: Who is Robert?
MATEJ: Robert is a friend of mine. He's from England. His mother is Slovene. And this weekend his girlfriend Jane is coming as well.
DENIS: Oh, this Englishman is unlucky. The weather is very bad.
MATEJ: You're right. It's been raining the whole week.
DENIS: When is Jane coming?
MATEJ: On Thursday afternoon.
DENIS: Is she English?
MATEJ: Yes, she's English.
DENIS: Do you have anything planned for Friday evening?
MATEJ: Not yet.
DENIS: My friend Sabina is coming to see me. She speaks very good English. Come and have supper, all of you!
MATEJ: Oh, thanks. Do you have time on Saturday? I have a new car and we are probably going for a trip somewhere.
DENIS: But Matej, don't you have your football training on Saturdays?
MATEJ: Yes, but that is not important!

Lesson 3

1
1 a, h; 2 b, c; 3 b, c; 4 a, b; 5 b, e.

2
1 Avtoh us ima včasih zamudo. 2 Vlak ima včasih zamudo. 3 Letalo ima včasih zamudo.

3 (examples)
1 Oprostite, ali ima avtoh us ob petkih vedno zamudo? 2 Ura je že deset. Zelo pozn smot! 3 Hvala. 4 Ne, Anglež sem.
The numbers are said as follows:
1 dvesto štiriinsedemdeset osemsto sedemintrideset; 2 dvesto triinpetdeset osemsto sedeminpetdeset; 3 dvesto sedemindvajseti dvesto štiriindvajseti; 4 dvesto štirinšestdeset osemsto šestindva-
jęst; 5 dvesto štiriinšestdeset nič sedemipetdeset.
You can also read out the numbers individually.

Danes je:
1 peti november, tisoč devetsto šestindvajseti; 2 sedemindvajseti
junij, tisoč devetsto štiriindvajseti; 3 enaintrideseti december,
tisoč devetsto triinšestdeset; 4 dvanajstj maj, tisoč osemsto
petinštrideset; 5 triindvajseti oktober, tisoč osemsto
triinšedemdeset.

Ura je petnajst in petdeset minut. Ura je šestnajst in deset minut.
Ura je dvaindvajseti in trideset minut. Ura je dvanajst in petnajst
minute. Ura je osemnajst in petinštrideset minut.

1 avtobus; 2 vlak; 3 avto; 4 letalo; 5 leto; 6 sobota; 7 ura; 8 meseč.

1 devetintrideset; 2 šestindvajset; 3 sedeminšestdeset; 4
dvainšestdeset; 5 dvaintrideset.

Dober dan. 2 Ja, je. 3 Ne, Anglež sem. 4 Ja, malo razumem. Ali
vi razumete angleško? Vidim, da imate angleški časopis. 5
Zanimivo. Ali ima veliko dela? 6 Če potrebujes pomoč ... moja
telefonska številka v Sloveniji je nič enainšestdeset petsto
šestinsedemdeset osemsto štiriindvajset.

1 igralka; 2 novinar; 3 pisateljica; 4 frizerka; 5 if you are a male,
student; if you are a female, študentka.

(a) Moj oče ni učitelj. Moj oče ni profesor. Moj oče ni zdravnik.
Moj oče ni novinar. Moj oče ni študent.
(b) Ali je tvoja mama študentka? Ali je tvoja mama prevajalka?
je tvoja mama tajnica?

To je John. Anglež je. Govori angleško in razume tudi malo
slovensko. 2 To je Pauline. Američanka je. Govori angleško in
razume tudi že malo slovensko. 3 To je Maria. Ona je Španka.
Govori Špansko in razume tudi malo slovensko. 4 To je Laura.
Italijanka je. Govori italijansko in razume tudi malo slovensko.
5 To je Angela. Angležinj je. Govori angleško in razume tudi malo
slovensko. 6 To je Darja. Slovenka je. Govori slovensko.

Po poklicu sem študent. Ali ste vi Slovenec?

Translation of the dialogue for comprehension

ROBERT: Jane, hello, how are you? You look well.
JANE: I'm sorry I'm late. It's already 6 o'clock.
ROBERT: Don't worry. Are you tired?
JANE: Yes, vry. I'm not coming by train ever again. Have you
been waiting long?
Robert: Yes, since three. But I'm not bored. I know a few people here.

Jane: Do you often come here?

Robert: Yes, two or three times a week, usually in the afternoon. Sometimes I have lunch here. Are you hungry?

Jane: No, I'm only thirsty. And sleepy. You've been here for three months now. Do you speak Slovene well?

Robert: Yes, reasonably. I have problems sometimes. But many people here speak English.

Jane: You always write that you have a lot of work.

Robert: Yes, I'm always very busy. But tonight I'm free!

Lesson 4

1

1 Robert se nikoli ne uči slovensko. 2 Danes ni nikogar doma. 3 Jaz se nikoli ne počutim dobro. 4 Moj prijatelj se nikoli ne smeh. 5 Sabina nikoli niče ne ve.

2

1 Ime mi je (your name). 2 Pišem se (your surname). 3 V ljubljani, to je moj naslov. 4 Ja, moja telefonska številka je nič enaincestdeset tristo petinsedemdeset tristo štiriinpetdeset. 5 Ne, tretjih. 6 Ne, delam tukaj. 7 Ja, zmeraj pomaga, če govorš jezik.

3

1 slabe volje; 2 star slovar; 3 lahek jezik; 4 majhna knjigarna; 5 grdo mesto.

4

1 Kolikokrat na teden ima Robert slovenski tečaj? 2 Kdo je Jane? 3 Koliko je ura? 4 Čigava je ta knjiga? 5 Oprostite, kje je knjigarna?

5

(a) 1 pet; 2 mesto; 3 hiša; 4 avto; 5 slovar. Down you get pošta.

(b) 1 gospod; 2 učitelj; 3 osem; 4 pomoč; 5 prosim. Across you get pismo.

6

(a) 1 Ali nameravaš iti letos na dopust? 2 Ali želis priti v kino danes včeraj? 3 Ali moraš začeti delati zgodaj jutri zjutraj?

(b) 1 Jaz ti lahko pomagam. 2 Trenutno se ne morem odločiti. 3 V petek zvečer ne morem iti na zabavo.

7

(a) 1 Zato, ker sem dobre volje. 2 Zato, ker se učim slovensko. 3 Zato, ker ima moj avtobus vsak dan zamudo.

(b) 1 Zakaj si slabe volje? 2 Zakaj greš na pošto? 3 Zakaj greš peš?

8


9

1 Ne skrbi! 2 Pohiti! 3 Oprostite! 4 Pridi sem! 5 Verjemi mi! 6 Počakaj!

10


11

1 Hotel ni daleč. Lahko grešte peš. 2 Trgovina je blizu. Tak za hotelom. 3 Avtobusna postaja ni daleč. Sto metrov na ravnost. 4 Žal mi je, ampak ne vem, kje je poštni nabiralnik. 5 Znamke lahko kupite v kiosku.

1 Kje je pošta? 2 Kje je pošni nahiralnik? 3 Kje je telefonska govorilnica? 4 Kje lahko kupim znamke? 5 Kje lahko telefoniram?

I četrtek is the odd one (it is a day of the week). The other words are professions. 2 American is the odd one (it is in the masculine form). The others are all feminine. 3 prides is the odd one (it is in the second person singular). The other verbs are in the first person singular. 4 prevajalec is the odd one (it is a profession). The other words are days of the week. 5 velika is the odd one (it is in the feminine form). The other adjectives are all in the masculine.

Translation of the dialogue for comprehension

MAN: Excuse me, do you know where the hotel Lev is?
ROBERT: Yes, I know. I live near there. In another hotel.
MAN: Is it far?
ROBERT: Hmm. ... Are you walking?
MAN: Yes. But I can take a bus.
ROBERT: I am going in that direction. You can come with me. It's twenty minutes' walk.
MAN: Oh, thank you. I must reserve rooms in the hotel. I'm expecting a visit over the weekend.
ROBERT: Are you a tourist?
MAN: No, I'm here for a year's work. I teach English at the university.
ROBERT: Are you English?
MAN: No, I'm American.
ROBERT: Oh, so we can speak English!

Lesson 5

1
1 tukaj; 2 tja; 3 sem; 4 tukaj; 5 tam.

2
govorite; ste vi; stanujete; vi; imate; vam; vam; imate.

3
1 Midva delava od devetih do petih. 2 Po navadi imava kosilo ob enih. 3 Ob sobotah in nedeljah ne delava. 4 Domov prideva okoli sedmih. 5 Vsako leto greva avgusta na dopust.

4
2 Prvi vlak v Ljubljano pelje ob sedmih zjutraj. 3 Prvi vlak v Pariz pelje ob osmih zjutraj. 4 Prvi vlak v Amsterdam pelje ob petih zjutraj. 5 Prvi vlak v Ženevo pelje ob devetih zjutraj. 6 Prvi vlak v Prago pelje ob štirih zjutraj.

5
2 Zadnji avtobus v Ljubljano pelje ob devetih zvečer. 3 Zadnji avtobus v Pariz pelje ob osmih zvečer. 4 Zadnji avtobus v Amsterdam pelje ob petih popoldne. 5 Zadnji avtobus v Ženevo pelje ob devetih zvečer. 6 Zadnji avtobus v Prago pelje ob štirih popoldne.

6
1 b; 2 b; 3 you are supposed to choose what you like best.

7
1 ju; 2 nas; 3 jo; 4 ga; 5 jih.
8

1 Ta kjiga je temno modra. 2 Njen slovar je rdeč. 3 Ta hotel je svetlo rjav. 4 Njegov novi avto je svetlo rjav. 5 Moje staro vozniško dovoljenje je roza.

9

1 mleko; 2 čaj; 3 kava; 4 sreda; 5 denar; 6 limona; 7 banka; 8 kavarna.

10

1 V sredo moram iti na banko in zamenjati denar. 2 Avgusta grem v Italijo. 3 V četrtek imam sestanek v Ljubljani. 4 Vprašati moram, kdaj pelje zadnji vlak v Milano. 5 Moja tajnica je december v Nemčiji.

11

1 Angleži radi igrajo nogomet. 2 Ann rada plava. 3 Tomaž rad igra tenis. 4 Jaz rad igram badminton. 5 Moja sestra rada smuča.

12

1 znamka za pismo; 2 potni list; 3 dežnik. 4 športno igrišče; 5 jesen.

13

1 official document; 2 ID; 3 postcard; 4 driving licence; 5 church.

14 (examples)

1 dober, zanimiv, slab; 2 lepo, slabo, grdo; 3 težko, zanimivo, pomembno; 4 težek, tuj, lep; 5 črna, bela, sladka; 6 dobra, stara, bogata.

Translation of the dialogue for comprehension

BARBARA: Waitress, can I order please?
WAITRESS: Yes, of course. What would you like?
BARBARA: A white coffee, a black coffee, a juice and a tea with lemon.

11

Nick: Tomaž, do you often go to the leisure centre?
Tomaž: Yes, I often go there in the winter. Now in spring I spend more time outside. Nick, do you play cricket? I don't know anything about this game.
Nick: I don't play cricket but a lot of my friends play this game.
Tomaž: I can't understand. . . . It seems to me to be so boring . . .
Nick: If you think about it, tennis is also a boring game.
Tomaž: Oh, no, if you want we can go and play it tomorrow.
Nick: Yes, and Barbara and Ann can go swimming.

Lesson 6

1

1 Tomaž išče dežnik. 2 Njegov plašč je v dnevni sobi na stolu. 3 Njegov dežnik je v kopalnici. 4 Njegov ključ je v kuhinji na mizi. 5 Hrana za psa je v hladilniku.

2


3 (examples)


4

1 že; 2 še; 3 še; 4 že; 5 šele.

5

1 Tomaz in Barbara sta na avtobusni postaji. 2 Avtobus številka pet pelje na letališče. 3 Zato ker je petek in gredo vsi iz mesta. 4 Ne, Tomaz in Barbara greta na obisk v Anglijo. Tam ima prijatelje. 5 Taksist jima zaželi prijeten dopust in srečo pot.

7

(a) Čakam na avtobus. Čakam na vlak. Čakam mojo prijateljico.
(b) Matie čaka svojo puno. Matie čaka Sonjo. Matie čaka na letalo.

8

1 V torem moram iti k zdravniku. 2 Jutri zjutraj moram iti po časopis. 3 Silva mora iti popoldne na pošto. 4 Danes zvečer grem na obisk k prijatelju. 5 V soboto moram iti po kruh in mleko.

9

1 Ta kozarec je prazen. 2 Na jugu je po navadi toplo. 3 Ta ulica je ozka. 4 Moja soseda Larisa je zelo prijazna. 5 London je veliko mesto.

10

2 V Parizu je danes toplo. Temperatura je sedemnašt stopinj celzija. 3 V Berlinu danes 20 celzija. Temperatura je dvanašt stopinj celzija. 4 V Moskvi je danes mrzlo. Temperatura je minus dvaindvajset stopinj celzija. 5 V Lizboni je danes sončno. Temperatura je devetnašt stopinj celzija. 6 V Rimu je danes vroče. Temperatura je osemindvajset stopinj celzija.

11

Dober dan, kako si?
Dobro, hvala, in ti?
Ne počutim se dobro. Vse me boli.
Pojdi k zdravniku!
Ja, nameram iti jutri popoldne.
Mimogrede, Alenka te lepo pozdravlja.
Hvala enako!

12

(a) 1 igrati; 2 morati; 3 svetovati; 4 pomagati; 5 priti; 6 misliti; 7 stati; 8 imeti; 9 govoriti.
(b) 1 Kaditi prepovedano; 2 Parkiranje prepovedano; 3 Nekaj govoriti; 4 Oprostitve, vstop prepovedan; 5 Število pot in prijeten dopust.

13

1 Mudi se nam. 2 Mudi se ti. 3 Mudi se mu. 4 Mudi se ji. 5 Mudi se vam!

14

1 Dežnik is the odd one out. The other words are rooms of a house or flat. 2 Radio is the odd one out. The other words are all food items. 3 Sporočilo is the odd one out. The other words describe the weather. 4 Sosed is the odd one out. The other words are verbs. 5 Osmi is the odd one out. It is an ordinal number.

Translation of the dialogue for comprehension

BARBARA: I'm going to the opera in London for the first time.
ANN: Do you go in Ljubljana often?
BARBARA: No, Tomaz doesn't like opera. But we go to the cinema often. Are we going by bus now?
ANN: No, we're going by train. I have a car but the traffic here is terrible. My car is almost always in the garage.
BARBARA: Yes, the traffic here is really very heavy. And all these cars on the left side of the road. It always seems to me there will be an accident any minute.
ANN: You're not used to it. Do you drive a lot?
BARBARA: No, hardly ever. Tomaz has the car all the time. He drives to work. And when we go somewhere together he drives. Are we in a hurry?
ANN: No, the performance starts at eight, now it's only 6 o'clock.
BARBARA: Do we have time for another coffee?
ANN: Yes, if you want we can have a coffee somewhere in town.
Lesson 7

1 (examples)


2

1 Zgodaj zjutraj, ob šestih. 2 Ne, popoldne sem bil pri prijatelju. 3 Pozno zvečer. 4 Ne, na žalost nimam časa. Danes popoldne ob stiričih imam sestanek. 5 Ne, zgodaj zjutraj je prilaš domov.

3

1 Ne, danes dopoldne sem imel sestanek. 2 Ne, prejšnji teden sem bil na dopustu. 3 Zelo lepo vreme smo imeli. 4 Ja, zelo nam je bilo všeč. 5 Ja, zgodaj zjutraj je prilaš domov.

4

1 Sonja bere počasi in razločno. 2 Pavarotti poje glasno. 3 V gledališču je bilo zanimivo. 4 Na dopustu sem se imela zelo dohoro. 5 Ta vaja je bila lahka.

5

1 Avstrija; 2 Hrvaška; 3 Italija; 4 Madžarska.

6

1 d; 2 e; 3 b; 4 a; 5 e.

7

1 slabo; 2 ozka; 3 nezanimiv; 4 prepričana; 5 lačen, žcjen.

8


9

1 Vreme je bilo zelo slab, ampak imeli smo se lepo. 2 Bilo je zelo mrzlo, ampak na severu je zmeraj takoj. 3 Moi prijatelj je že doma, ampak nisem ga še videl. 4 Avgusta grem na dopust, ampak ne vem še kam. 5 Ves dan sem delal, ampak nisem utrujen.

10

1 sem se poročil; 2 moje staro stanovanje, majhno hišo; 3 Moji starši; 4 so nama ga ukradli; 5 Letos, noseča.

11

1 Kaj te boli? 2 Pokliči me jutri! 3 Kaj se ji je zgodilo? 4 Kje si jo spoznal? 5 Iz kod je?

12

A: Ali si že videla ta film?
B: Ja, ali ti nisem povedala?
A: Mogoče, ampak ne spomnim se. Pozabila sem. Ali ti je bil všeč?
B: Ne, ti mi bil všeč.
A: Zakaj ne?
B: Zdel se mi je dolgočasen.

13

1 semafor; 2 grlo; 3 teta; 4 zob; 5 vaja; 6 pes; 7 zahod; 8 hčerka; 9 plaža; 10 kitara. At 11 across you get fotoaparat.

14

(a) 1 malo; 2 visok, suh; 3 slabo; 4 ozka; 5 težka.
(b) 1 Eno veliko pivo, prosim. 2 Njen fant je zelo majhen in debel. 3 Imeli smo lepo vreme. 4 Ta ulica je zelo široka. 5 Ta vaja ni bila lahka.
Translation of the dialogue for comprehension

BARBARA: Anita, hello. I must tell you something, that is to say, I must ask you something.

ANITA: Yes, what?

BARBARA: Yesterday on the way home Tomaž met Sandra, quite by chance. Did Sandra tell Sabina anything about the trip?

ANITA: Do you mean Emilio?

BARBARA: Oh, is his name Emilio?

ANITA: Yes, Sandra says that he has long hair. She saw the photographs. He apparently writes poetry and plays the guitar.

BARBARA: Does Eva knows anything about this?

ANITA: I doubt it. But Sandra wants to go back to Italy.

BARBARA: Poor Eva. I'm sure she doesn't know anything. She only told me how they stole her camera.

ANITA: It wasn't stolen. She gave it to him on the last day, as a memento.

Lesson 8

1

1 Soba v hotelu je za Roberta premajhna. 2 Matej je včeraj zvečer srečal Sabino. 3 V Sloveniji je poleti za Roberta prevrloče. 4 Sabinin teča oddaja sobe. 5 Robert ni našel plana mesta.

2

1 Moj avto je prestal za na cesto. 2 Moje stanovanje je pozimi premrežlo. 3 Ekspresso kava je zame premočna. 4 Jaz nikoli ne vozim prehitro. 5 Tista restavracija je bila predraga.

3

1 Ali si kupil hišo ali stanovanje? 2 Ali je bilo drag? 3 Prepičan sem, da imaš sedaj veliko dela. 4 Kdaj se seliš? 5 Hmm ... ne zavidam ti!

4

1 stanovanje; 2 pisalno mizo; 3 teta; 4 razpolago; 5 pekarno.

5

1 kuhinja; 2 elementi; 3 sesalec; 4 štedilnik; 5 miza; 6 stol; 7 spalnica; 8 pohištvo; 9 kave; 10 hladilnik.

6

1 Kupil si bom tri knjige. 2 Ob desetih popoldne bom šel v kavarno. 3 Ves popoldan se bom učil slovenščino. 4 V mesto se bom peljal z avtobusom. 5 Od sedmih do osmih zjutraj bom igral tenis.

7

DAVOR: Kje je stanovanje?

SURGE: Blizu centra. Ali ga hoces priti pogledati?

DAVOR: Ali si danes zvečer prost?

SURGE: Ja, jutri se lahko dobiva v centru.

DAVOR: Ja, kje?

SURGE: V kavarni 'Marija'.

DAVOR: Koliko stane najemnina?

SURGE: Zvečer ti bom vse povedal.

8 (translation of the sentences)

1 I live in a block of flats. 2 I have a two-room flat. 3 My flat is in the centre of the town. 4 I live on my own. 5 I don't have the kitchen.

9

1 bo; 2 deževalo; 3 od; 4 do; 5 V četrtek; 6 popoldne; 7 Temperature; 8 okoli; 9 popoldne; 10 sonec.

10

Lesson 9

1


2

2 Avto je v garaži. 3 Mleko je v hladilniku. 4 Dežnik je v kopališču. 5 Časopis je na mizi. 6 Rož so v vazi.

3 (examples)

SERGEJ: Ali si bil v turistični agenciji?
DAVOR: Ja, hčim. Vprašal sem, koliko stane letalska voznica.
SERGEJ: Ali je pocieni ali draga?
SERGEJ: Ali nimajo čarterskih poletov?
DAVOR: Ne, poleti jih nimajo.

4


5

2 Ne, ni mi treba kaditi, ampak jaz rad kadim. 3 Ne, ni mi jih treba rezervirati en mesec v naprej, ampak jaz jih rad v naprej rezerviram. 4 Ne, ni mi treba iti v kino dvakrat na teden, ampak jaz rad hodim v kino. 5 Ne, ni mi treba delati vsak večer, ampak jaz rad delam ob večerih. 6 Ne, ni mi treba poslušati glasbo ves dan, ampak jaz rad poslušam glasbo.

6

1 veš; 2 poznaš, poznam; 3 znaš, znam; 4 vedel; 5 vem, vem.
7
1 odločiti; 2 prodal; 3 plačal; 4 posoditi; 5 kupim.

8
1 Sabina študira ekonomijo. 2 Tanja študira pravo. 3 Milena študira
godovino. 4 Ana študira matematiko. 5 Janez študira biologijo.

9 (translation of what you are supposed to fill in)
1 Your surname; 2 Your name; 3 Your
4 Your nationality; 5 Your date of birth; 6 The place of your birth; 7 Your
8 Your permanent address; 9 Your

10
1 b; 2 c; 3 a; 4 b; 5 a.

11
1 Ura je tri četrtna eno. 2 Ura je četrtna deset. 3 Ura je pol
osmih. 4 Ura je tri četrtna štiri. 5 Ura je tri četrtna šest. 6 Ura
je pol petih.

12
kava – coffee; kruh – bread; čaj – tea; mleko – milk; jajca – eggs;
krompir – potatoes; sir – cheese.

13
Ali lahko dobim:
1 en kilogram jabolk; 2 pol kilograma marelic; 3 štiri hruške; 4 dve
breskvi; 5 en ananas.

14 (examples)
I težek kovček, težka lekeija, težko delo; 2 lep dan, lepa hiša, lepo
vreme; 3 dober krompir, dobra zelenjava, dobro jabolk; 4 nezan-
imiv film, nezanimiva knjiga, nezanimivo delo; 5 majhen radio,
majhna restavracija, majhno darilo.

Translation of the dialogue for comprehension

Sergej: Good evening. Come in!
Robert: No, unfortunately I can't. I only came to tell you that I
can't stop today. I'm going to supper. Do you know
Sabina and her aunt?
Sergej: No, I don't know her. I only moved in last month. But
Boštjan and Davor know them. Sabina studies law.
Robert: Yes, Matej mentioned that she was a student. Apparently
she has been in the first year for three years already. But
this doesn't matter. I wanted to ask you if you'd like to
go out to supper on Friday evening. I'm inviting you.
Sergej: Yes, but on Fridays we usually go to a café where they
play jazz. If you wish you can come too.
Robert: Yes, we can first go and have something to eat.
Sergej: Come in for five minutes! Let's ask Boštjan and Davor!
Robert: I really can't. I'm late already!

Lesson 10

1
jabolka – apples; hruške – pears; marelice – apricots; slive – plums;
borovnice – bilberries; jagode – strawberries.

2
Dobro jutro, ali lahko dobim:
1 en kilogram jabolk; 2 pol kilograma marelic; 3 štiri hruške; 4 dve
breskvi; 5 en ananas.

3 (examples)
1 Dober dan, mizo za dva, prosim. 2 Ali je tista miza pri oknu
prosta? 3 Ja, ali lahko dohiva jedilni list? 4 Ali nama lahko kaj
priporocate? 5 Jaz bi rad nekaj malega. Pogledal bom, kaj imate.
Ali lahko naročim pijačo?

4 (examples)
1 Kaj hoste pili? 2 Ali imaš rad testenine? 3 Ali lahko dobim jedilni
liš? 4 Ali si lačen? 5 Ali bi kavo?
Gospod natakar, jaz bi rad naročil:
enzelenjavno juho; endunajskijrezek, krompir in zeleno solato;
enosadno kupo; in kozarec rdečega vina.

1 sol in poper; 2 malo kruha; 3 še eno zeleno solato; 4 nož in vilico;
5 servijeto.

1 ... bi gledal televizijo. 2 ... bi ti povedala. 3 ... bi ti priporočal,
da greš v kino. 4 ... bi ga poklical. 5 ... bi mi lahko prinesel tisto
knjigo.

1 c; 2 e; 3 f; 4 a; 5 h; 6 d.

1 jedilni list; 2 zelje; 3 zrezek; 4 sladoled; 5 žlica; 6 vilica; 7 nož;
8 sir; 9 mleko; 10 riž; 11 solata; 12 torta.

Če bi poslušala, bi slišala. 2 Če bi vedel, bi ti povedal. 3 Če bi
jo videl, bi jo pozdravil. 4 Če okno ne bi bilo odprto, ne bi bilo
tako mrzlo. 5 Če bi imel svojo telefonsko številko, bi te poklical.

He recommends him their fish because it is always fresh. 2 Oto
had fish for lunch every day that week and he wanted to order
something else. 3 He eventually orders a salad, some bread and a
fruit juice.
Lesson 11

1


(b) 1. Moj brat je podoben mami. 2. Moja sestrična je podobna moji teti.

2

1. lekarno; 2. počutil; 3. si; 4. tablete; 5. ga; 6. mu; 7. videl.

3

1. kupimo; 2. odločiti; 3. govorim; 4. lahko; 5. ne morejo.

4

 المنا (mouth); zobi (tooth); lasje (hair); hrbet (back); obraz (face);

rav (neck); oko (eye); telo (body).

5

1. Zob me boli. 2. Želodec me boli. 3. Ušesa me bolijo. 4. Hrbet me boli. 5. Vse me boli.

6

1. berem; 2. igram; 3. poslušam; 4. gledam; 5. učim se; 6. kuham.

7

1. V kolikor jaz vem, je bolan. 2. V kolikor jaz vem, ima gripo.

3. V kolikor jaz vem, bo še enkrat telefoniral. 4. V kolikor jaz vem, bo še el k zdravniku. 5. V kolikor jaz vem, bo jutri tukaj.

8

(a) 1. Zato, ker sem bil bolan ... 2. Zato, ker so bile cene visoke ...
Translation of the dialogue for comprehension

ROBERT: Excuse me, will they call me?
WOMAN: Yes, haven’t you been here before?
ROBERT: No, the doctor came to my house last week.
WOMAN: Did anything terrible happen to you?
ROBERT: No, I had flu. But I could hardly move. Everything hurt and I was feeling dizzy. My neighbour called the doctor.
WOMAN: Yes, yes, I know that flu. A colleague of mine has already been at home for two weeks. She is sneezing, coughing and apparently all her bones hurt. Do you also feel like that?
ROBERT: No, I’ve already recovered. I’m feeling much better. I only came for a check-up.
WOMAN: You were lucky. You’re still young! That helps!

Lesson 12

1

1 V sredo popoldne sem na sestanku. 2 Za v petek imam nekaj v planu. 3 Naslednji teden nisem v mestu. 4 V četrtek zvečer grem v kino. 5 Ob ponedeljkih po navadi igram košarko.

2 (examples)

1 Sabina ni doma. Kdo kliče? 2 Ne, Sabina ima začasno službo na Bledu. 3 Dela v hotelu ob jezeru, v recepciji. 4 Dva meseca, do oktobra. 5 Pravi, da, ampak ima veliko dela. Sledaj je turistična sezona.

3

1 začasno; 2 v enem hotelu; 3 v recepciji; 4 zasedene; 5 Sergej.
Tja sem želila in tudi oni imajo vse zasedeno. Ali imate morda informacije o privatnih sobah?
Ne, pokličite turistične informacije. Njihovo številko imam, če želite.
Tisto številko imam sam. Hvala, nasvidenje.

10 (examples)

1 Oprostite, ali veste kje je restavracija 'Kaj'? Ne, na žalost ne vem.
2 Kaj iščeš?
   Iščem najstnik.
   Jaz sem ga videla v kopalnici.
3 Katero restavracijo mi priporočate?
   Za vlagalom je ena nova, znana po rihah.
   Ali je draga ali ponetna?

11 (a) 1 Vprašal sem, če imajo prosto dvoposteljno sobo za eno noč.
   2 Vprašal sem, kakšna je cena. 3 Vprašal sem, kdaj je zajtrk.

(b) 1 Rekel je, da imajo dve enoposteljni sobi. 2 Rekel je, da je cena enaka. 3 Rekel je, da sta sohi veliki in lepo opremljeni.

12
1 Sergej je rekla, naj več študira. 2 Boštjan je reklo, naj ne dela to poletje. 3 Davor je reklo, naj se ne druži z Sandro. 4 Sabina je rekla Sergeju, naj se briga za sebe. 5 Sabina je rekla Boštjanu, naj si pošče punec.

13 (example)


14

avto – garaža; omara – hiša; receptor – hotel; pivo – gostilna; zrezek – restavracija; znamka – pošta; knjiga – knjigarna.

Translation of the dialogue for comprehension

ROBERT: I hope this private house will be better than the one where I stayed the night last year.

SERGEJ: What was wrong?

ROBERT: Everything was wrong. It was in the winter, it was very cold and the heating didn’t work. The window in my room didn’t close. The light in the bathroom was broken and I had a shower in the dark. The shower worked but as soon as someone above us had a shower the water stopped running. Something was also wrong with the lavatory: the bathroom smelt. And around the corner there was a pub, open all night. The music was very loud. No one could sleep.

SERGEJ: Why didn’t you all go to that pub?

ROBERT: I had worked all day and I was tired in the evening. I wanted to have a rest. My friends were also tired.

SERGEJ: I’ll he looking after the music tonight. You aren’t tired and we shall all have a party.

ROBERT: Aren’t we going to the lake tomorrow early in the morning?

SERGEJ: Yes, don’t you know that every lake looks best from the terrace of some café?

Lesson 13

1

1 Sandra bo zavila darilo za Roberta. 2 Zato, ker jih ni nasla. 3 Ne vem. 4 Ko zaseda bi morali biti v eni škatli v dnevni sobi. 5 Če se bodo spomnili.

2

1 Ne spomnimo se, koliko sem plačal za to knjigo. 2 Ne spomin sem, kako se piše moja tajnica. 3 Spomni me, telefonirati moram mami! 4 Spomni me, iti moram na banko! 5 Ne spomin sem, kako je to reče po slovensko.
3


4

They bought him a cookery book because he once mentioned to them that he liked cooking. The book is a vegetarian cookery book because Sabina knows that Robert is a vegetarian.

5


6

hlače - trousers; bluza - blouse; kravata - tie; krilo - skirt; čevlji - shoes; rokavice - gloves; šal - scarf.

7


8 (examples)


9

1. Manjše, večje; 2. bliže, dlje; 3. boljše, slabša; 4. cenjša, dražja; 5. bogatejši, revnejši.

Translation of the dialogue for comprehension

ROBERT: Do you celebrate all birthdays like this?
SERGEJ: No, your birthday was special.
ROBERT: Why?
SERGEJ: Because you'll soon go back to England. We can't wait for your fortieth birthday or engagement or wedding or christening...
ROBERT: Do you celebrate national holidays in Slovenia?
SERGEJ: Yes, but if there isn't one... Your birthday came really at the right time.
ROBERT: And what if no one has a birthday?
SERGEJ: Oh, we always find a reason to celebrate.
### Slovene-English glossary

**Guide to the use of this glossary:**
- **Nouns:** the gender of the noun is indicated in brackets by (m.) for masculine, (f.) for feminine, (n.) for neuter and (pl.) for plural if the noun is usually in its plural form.
- **Verbs:** the first person singular of the verb is indicated in brackets. From there you will be able to form other personal endings, as you have learned following this course.
- **Adjectives:** these are given in their masculine stem form and the endings for feminine and neuter forms are indicated.
- **Job titles and other words where there is a different form for male and a female (e.g. `neighbour`):** the male stem is given and the form for a female is indicated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slovene</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adijajo</td>
<td>bye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ali</td>
<td>or, indicates a question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amerika</td>
<td>America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ampak</td>
<td>but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ananas (m.)</td>
<td>pineapple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anglija</td>
<td>England</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avto (m.)</td>
<td>car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avtobus (m.)</td>
<td>bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>badminton (m.)</td>
<td>badminton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baje</td>
<td>supposedly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banka (f.)</td>
<td>bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bel/af-o</td>
<td>white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biti</td>
<td>to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blagajnica (f.)</td>
<td>till</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blizu</td>
<td>close by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bluza (f.)</td>
<td>close by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bogati/af-o</td>
<td>rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boleti (bolim)</td>
<td>to hurt, to ache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>borovnica (f.)</td>
<td>bilberry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branjekva (f.)</td>
<td>greengrocer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brat</td>
<td>brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bratranc</td>
<td>cousin (male)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brskev (f.)</td>
<td>peach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brokati (bruham)</td>
<td>to vomit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cena (f.)</td>
<td>price</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cerkev (f.)</td>
<td>church</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>čaj (m.)</td>
<td>tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>čakati (čakam)</td>
<td>to wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>četirte</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>črno/af-o</td>
<td>black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>čuden/dna/af-o</td>
<td>strange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da</td>
<td>that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dan (m.)</td>
<td>day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>danes</td>
<td>today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dati (dam)</td>
<td>to give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datom (m.)</td>
<td>date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delati (delam)</td>
<td>to work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denar (m.)</td>
<td>money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deč (m.)</td>
<td>rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dečevati (dečjuje)</td>
<td>to rain (it rains)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dežnik (m.)</td>
<td>umbrella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dežorni/af-o</td>
<td>on duty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dešati (diham)</td>
<td>to breathe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dišati (dišam)</td>
<td>to smell nice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dnevna soba (f.)</td>
<td>living-room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dober/bro/bran</td>
<td>good, well, fine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dokument (m.)</td>
<td>document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolg/af-o</td>
<td>long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doma</td>
<td>at home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domov</td>
<td>to go home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dopoldan</td>
<td>morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dopoldne</td>
<td>in the morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dopust (m.)</td>
<td>holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dovolj</td>
<td>enough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>driska</td>
<td>diarrhoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draslišče (n.)</td>
<td>skating rink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>družina (f.)</td>
<td>family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>družiti se z</td>
<td>to mix with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(družim se z)</td>
<td>(it rains)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>država (f.)</td>
<td>country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>državljansko (n.)</td>
<td>nationality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dvigalo (n.)</td>
<td>lift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dvomiti</td>
<td>to doubt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(dvomim)</td>
<td>(doubt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fižol (m.)</td>
<td>bean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Francija</td>
<td>France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friser/-ka</td>
<td>barber/ hairdresser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garagga (f.)</td>
<td>garage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garsonjera (f.)</td>
<td>studio flat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gasilci (pl.)</td>
<td>fire brigade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gimnastika (f.)</td>
<td>gymnastics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glasba (f.)</td>
<td>music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glava (f.)</td>
<td>head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glavna cesta (f.)</td>
<td>main road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glavna jeda (f.)</td>
<td>main meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>globok/af-o</td>
<td>deep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gospa</td>
<td>Mrs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gospod</td>
<td>Mr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gospodnja</td>
<td>housewife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gost (m.)</td>
<td>guest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gost/af-o</td>
<td>heavy (traffic), thick, dense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gostilna (f.)</td>
<td>pub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>govorniti</td>
<td>to speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grod/af-o</td>
<td>ugly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gripa (f.)</td>
<td>flu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grb (n.)</td>
<td>throat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harmonika (f.)</td>
<td>accordion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hečka</td>
<td>daughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hiša (f.)</td>
<td>house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hlače (pl.)</td>
<td>trousers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hlađilnik (m.)</td>
<td>fridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoditi (hodim)</td>
<td>to walk, to attend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hokej (m.)</td>
<td>hockey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hotel (m.)</td>
<td>hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hotelci (hočem)</td>
<td>to want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrana (f.)</td>
<td>food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hruška (f.)</td>
<td>pear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hvata</td>
<td>thank you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>igralec/-ka</td>
<td>actor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>igrati (igram)</td>
<td>to play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imeti</td>
<td>to have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imeti na</td>
<td>to have available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>razpolago</td>
<td>in and</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
iskati (tiščem) to look for
Italija Italy
tili (grem) to go
izbira (f.) choice
izbrati (izberem) to choose
izmeriti (s) (izmerim) to measure
izplačati se (izplačam se) to be worth
izposoditi si (izposodim si) to borrow
izstopiti (izstopim) to exit
izvolite here you are
ja apple strudel
jabolčani zavitek (m.)
jabolko (n.) apple
jaboda (f.) strawberry
drabok (jaham) to ride
danje (n.) egg
jaz meal
ejed (f.) bread
jedilni list (m.) menu
ejedilti pribor (m.) cutlery
jesen (f.) autumn
ejesi (jcem) to eat
jetra (pl.) liver
jezero (n.) lake
jezik (m.) tongue, language
jogurt (m.) yoghurt
jog (m.) sou
juha (f.) soup
justro (n.) morning
kako how
kakor hitro as soon as
kakorkoli any way, anyhow
kališčati (kaščam) to cough
kateri which one
kava (Ł.) coffee
kavarna (f.) café
couch to sneeze
kibati (kibam) sour
kisel/-sla/-o guitar
klit (f.) piano
kljub temu celler
kluč (m.) in spite of this
knijega (f.) key
knjigarna (f.) book
količen how many
kolikokrat how often, how many
kolo (n.) bicycle
kompass (m.) compass
kopališča (f.) bathroom
kos (m.) piece, slice
kotarka (f.) basketball
kosilo (n.) lunch
kostim (m.) suit (for a woman)
kozarec (m.) glass
krašek/-ka/-o short
kravata (Ł.) tie
kredit (m.) loan
kril (n.) skirt
križ (m.) cross, back (coll.)
križanka (f.) crossword puzzle
krompir (m.) potato
krožnik (m.) plate
kruh (m.) bread
kuhan/-a/-u cooked
duh (m.) kitchen
duh (f.) to cook
kurja (f.) heating
(piti) lačen/čn-o (to be) hungry
lađa (f.) ship
lahek/-ha/-o easy, light
lahko noč good night
lani last year
las (m./lasje) hair
lastniki/ica owner
leče (pl.) contact lenses
led (m.) ice
lečiča (f.) lesson
ledul/-a/-o beautiful
letališče (n.) airport
letalo (n.) plane
leto (n.) this year
letos year
ljetos Iron
likalnik (m.) lemon
limona (f.) love
ljubezen (f.) divorced
ločen/a light
lub (f.) stepmother
maketa small
majhen/-bna/-o trifle, small thing
malenkost (f.) snack
malica (Ł.) raspberry
dmalina (f.) little
malo rarely
malokrat mother
to be missing
manjkati (manjkan)
manjkača (f.) (to be) healing
marica (f.) honey
med (m.) foggy, hazy
megal/-a/-o canteen
mizani (mizam) to mix
menza (f.) month
menščina (f.) butcher's
mesec (m.) town
mesto (n.) we
mi by the way
minigreda mineral water
mineralnica voda mineral water
miščeti (mislim) to think
miza (f.) table
mleko (n.) milk
močen/-čna/-čno strong
moder/-dra/-o blue
mogoče maybe, possibly
morati (moram) must
morda maybe
toliti (tomim) to disturb
mrzel/-za/-o cold
muzaj (m.) museum
na zdravje cheers
načeti (m.) plan
najemnica (f.) rent
najeti (najde) to find
najljučje (n.) chance
naležljiv/-a/-o contagious
namenavati to intend
namizni (čen) table tennis
napisati (napisem) to write
tip
napoščiti (napolnim) to fill up
to do, to make
napraviti (napravim) to do, to make
narešiti (naredim) to order
narečiti (naročim) address, title
to order
tagaj (tagaj) goodbye
nataška/-ica waiter, waitress
navadno, po usually
na (biti) navajen/ -a/-o (to be) used to
našaj back (wards)
negaj nephew
nejčak niece
nejčasnikje Sunday
nedelja (Ł.) some, something
necaj Germany
nemogče impossible
pozanimati se (pozanimam se)
to find out
prališni stroj (m.)
washing machine
prav (m.)
correct, alright, OK
pravo (n.)
law
pravzaprav (m.)
actually
prazem/-zna/-o (predpišem)
to prescribe
predsednik
president
predvčerajšnjim
day before
pregled
check-up, medical examination
pregledati (pregledam)
to examine
prehitevati (hitit)
to be fast
prehajen/-a/-o
(to have a) cold
prehod za
zebra crossing
pešce (m.)
walking
prikriti (m.)
to move
prenociti (prenočim)
to stay overnight
presenečenje (n.)
surprise
presenetiti (presenetim)
to surprise
prevajalec/-ka
interpreter
prevestiti
translate
prevodom/-dno/a/o (prevedem)
careful
preživeti (preživim)
to survive
prhu (f.)
shower
pržižno
approximately
prihodnje, drugo leto
next year
primek (m.)
surname
prijatek
friend (male)
prijatejlica
friend (female)
prjava (f.)
declaration
prijaviti
to declare
(prijavim)
(prijazem/-zna/-o)
friendly
prikuha (f.)
side dish
primer (m.)
example
prinesti
to bring
(pринесем)
(pринесем)
(prinestim)
(princem)
(pринесем)
(pринесем)
priraviti
to prepare
(pриравим)
(pринесем)
(pринесем)
pristen/-ina/-o
genuine, authentic, typical
prijite (pridem)
to come
profužalnik/-ka
shop assistant
profesor/-ica
lecturer
promet (m.)
traffic
prosit (prosim)
to ask, to request
prošnja (f.)
an application, request
prostor (m.)
space
pulover (m.)
pullover
pustiti (pustim)
to leave
radio (m.)
radio
ravo
just
ravno
just
razglednica (f.)
postcard
razmišljati (razmišlam)
to think about
razočaravan/-a/-o
disappointed
razprodaja (f.)
sale
razstava (f.)
exhibition
rdeč/-a/-o
red
rehra (pl.)
ribs
reci (rečem)
to say
red (m.)
order
rekel/o
rarely
reka (f.)
river
rekreacijski center (m.)
leisure centre
reportaža (f.)
report
res
true
resen/-sna/-o
serious
restavracija (f.)
restaurant
reven/-na/-o
poor
rezervacija (f.)
reservation
riba (f.)
fish
riž (m.)
rice
rjav/-a/-o
brown
rojstni dan (m.)
birthday
roka (f.)
gloves
rokavice (pl.)
gloves
rokomet (m.)
volleyball
roža (f.)
flower
rumen/-a/-o
yellow
rusija
Russia
sadje (n.)
fruit
sadna kupa (f.)
fruit salad
sam/-a
alone, on one's own
samopostrezna (f.)
supermarket
sandali (pl.)
sandals
sedaj
now
sedeti (sedim)
to sit
semafor (m.)
traffic light
servijeta (f.)
napkin, serviette
sesalec (m.)
vacuum cleaner
sestanek (m.)
meeting
sestra
sister
sestrična (sestrična)
cousin (female)
sestričica
sister
sever
north
slab/-a/-o
space
smejati
(to) smile, to laugh
slab/-a/-o
space
slika (f.)
picture, photograph, painting
slika (slikam)
to take photographs
slivka (f.)
dictionary
slovenija
Slovenia
slovenska
slovenian
slovenščina
Slovenian
smočiti se
(to) be allowed
smeti (smem)
to throw bad
smrketi
(to) smell bad
smrdeći
(to) smell
smučati
(to) ski
smučen/-smučena/-o
daughter-in-law
snaha
daughter-in-law
sneg
cold
snep (m.)
snow
sobič (m.)
Saturday
sobota (f.)
Saturday
sodevitec/-ka
colleague
sok (m.)
juice
sok (f.)
salt
solata (f.)
salad
sonce (n.)
sun
sosed/-eda
neighbour
spalnica (f.)
bedroom
spodnje perilo (n.)
underwear
spol (m.)
moški, ženski
spomin (m.)
memory
za spomin
as a souvenir, memento
spomniti se
to remember
(spomin se)
sporočilo (n.)
message
spoznavati
(spoznam)
sprehod (m.)
walk
srce (n.)
heart
sreča (f.)
luck
srečati (srečam)
to meet
srečen/-čen/-o
happy
sreda (f.)
Wednesday
sredi
in the middle
stanovanje (n.)
flat
star/-a/-o
old
star/a/-o
grandmother
star/a/-o
grandparents
star/a/-o
grandfather
star/a/-o
parents
stati (stojim)
to stand
steklenica (f.)
bottle
stol (m.)
chair
stopnice (pi.)
stairs
storiti (storim)
to do
stranične (pi.)
lavatory
stric
uncle
svak
brother-in-law
svakinja
sister-in-law
svet (m.)
world
svetovati
to advise, to suggest
(svetujem)
svež/-a/-e
fresh
svinčnik (m.)
pencil
svoj/-i/-a
one's own
šal (m.)
scarf
široke/-l/-o
wide
škatla (f.)
box
škornji (pl.)
boots
španija
Spain
špinac (f.)
spinach
športni park (m.)
sports park
športno igrišče (n.)
playground
štedilnik (m.)
cooker, stove
študent-ka
student
tački/ica
secretary
tajni/KI-CA
mother-in-law
tast
father-in-law
tec/Čenem (m.)
to run
teden (m.)
week
telefon (m.)
telephone
telefonirati
(telofoniram)
telefončka
number
telo (n.)
body
temperatura (f.)
temperature
tenis (m.)
tennis
termometer (m.)
thermometer
testenine (pl.)
pasta
teta
aunt
tezek/-žka/-o
difficult, heavy
čo/čen/-čen/-o
exact, punctual, accurate
toda
but
topec
warm
torek (m.)
Tuesday
torta (f.)
cake
tovornjak (m.)
lorry
trebuh (m.)
belly
trenutek (m.)
moment
trd/ţrţnica (f.)
market
trgovina (f.)
shop
tri četrt
three quarters
trim steza (f.)
running track
tudi
also
tukaj
here
tuš (m.)
shower
tusirati se
to have a
(tuširam se)
shower
učitelj/-ica
teacher
učiti se
to learn, to
(učim se)
study
učiti (učim)
to teach
udozen/bn/a/-o
comfortable
uho (n.)
car
ukrasiti (ukradem)
to steal
ulica (m.)
street
dvajanje (n.)
ice-skating
unremeti (unrem)
to die
ura (f.)
time, watch, clock
uraln/dn/a/-o
official
usta (pl.)
mouth
ustaviti (ustavim)
to stop
utrajati/-stavam/-u/-o
bored
tuk (m.)
sports park
tek.
under
v kolikor
as far as
vaza (f.)
vasel
važen/-na/-o
important
včasih
sometimes
včera
yesterday
večer
evening
večercaja (f.)
supper
večkrat
often
velikokrat
very often
vedenje (n.)
behaviour
vedeti (vem)
to know
vedno, zmeraj
always
velik/-a/-o
big
veter (m.)
wind
vi
you (plural)
videti (vidim)
to see
vičica (f.)
fork
vino (n.)
wine
vloč (m.)
train
vnot
grandson
vnut
granddaughter
vod/a
water
vogal (m.)
corner
voziščo
driving licence
dovoljenje (n.)
ticket (bus, train)
vrat (m.)
eck
vreme (n.)
weather
vrašati se
(vrnem se)
to get back
vrt (m.)
garden
vsečakor
by all means
biti višč (with...
dative
(vsečakor)
(zemljo)
vzhod
east
vživeti se
v
(vživim se)
vzrok (m.)
reason
vstopiti
(to enter
(vstopim)
WC (m.)
lavatory
zahava (f.)
party
zakasen/-na/-o
temporary
zaključiti (začen)
to start, to begin
zadovoljen/
-sam/-jo
satisfied
zahod
west
zahvaliti se
to thank oneself
(zahvalim se)
zajtrk (m.)
breakfast
zakaj
why
zaljuditi se
to fall in love
(zaljudim se)
zamenjati
(to change
(zamenjam)
zanimiv/-a/-o
interesting
zaostajati
(to be late
zaprati (zaprem)
close
zaradi
because of
zaradi
fiance
zasedeti
(zasedem)
združiti
(zadružim)
Guide to the use of this glossary:

- All the Slovene words are in bold.
- Nouns: the gender of the noun is indicated in brackets by (m.) for masculine, (f.) for feminine, (n.) for neuter and (pl.) for plural if the noun is usually in its plural form.
- Verbs: the first person singular of the verb is indicated in brackets. From there you will be able to form other personal endings, as you have learned following this course.
- Adjectives: these are given in their masculine stem form and the endings for feminine and neuter forms are indicated.
- Job titles and other words where there is a different form for male and female (e.g. ‘neighbour’): the male stem is given and the form for a female is indicated otherwise.

about o harmonika (f.) always vedno, zmeraj
accordion igralec/-lka America Amerika
actor naslov (m.) and in
address, title svetoviti kakor koli
 серьезнi (f.) anyway, anyhow
in the afternoon (svetujem) apple jaboko (n.)
in the afternoon apple
airport popoldan popoldan
in the afternoon (svetujem) apple strudle
ležalniče (n.) application, jabolčki zavitek
landing field (m.) request
airport popoldan
airport to be allowed apricot prošnja (f.)
alone aproximadamente
alone približno
already as soon as kakor hitro
also as far as v kolikor

English–Slovene
glossary

• Nouns: the gender of the noun is indicated in brackets by (m.) for masculine, (f.) for feminine, (n.) for neuter and (pl.) for plural if the noun is usually in its plural form.

• Verbs: the first person singular of the verb is indicated in brackets. From there you will be able to form other personal endings, as you have learned following this course.

• Adjectives: these are given in their masculine stem form and the endings for feminine and neuter forms are indicated.

• Job titles and other words where there is a different form for male and female (e.g. ‘neighbour’): the male stem is given and the form for a female is indicated otherwise.

about o harmonika (f.) always vedno, zmeraj
accordion igralec/-lka America Amerika
actor naslov (m.) and in
address, title svetovati kakor koli
езнj (f.) anyway, anyhow
in the afternoon apple jaboko (n.)
in the afternoon apple strudle
ležalničke (n.) application, jabolčki zavitek
airport popoldan
airport popoldan
airport to be allowed apricot prošnja (f.)
alone aproximadamente
already as soon as kakor hitro
also as far as v kolikor
to ask
at the moment
at...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Slovenian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to keep</td>
<td>ravnokar, ravnno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key</td>
<td>ključ (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitchen</td>
<td>kuhinja (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife</td>
<td>nož (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to know</td>
<td>vedeti (vem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lake</td>
<td>jezero (a.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last year</td>
<td>lani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be late</td>
<td>zaostajati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to laugh</td>
<td>zdavnaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lavy</td>
<td>WC (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law</td>
<td>pravo (a.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to learn</td>
<td>učiti se (učim se)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to leave</td>
<td>posoditi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lecturer</td>
<td>profesor/-ica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leisure centre</td>
<td>rekreacijski center (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lemon</td>
<td>limona (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to lend</td>
<td>posoditi (posodim)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lesson</td>
<td>lekcija (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letter</td>
<td>pismo (n.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letter-box</td>
<td>poštni nahlizniški (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lift</td>
<td>dvigan (n.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light</td>
<td>luč (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little</td>
<td>biti vseč</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>ljubezen (l.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>majka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother-in-law</td>
<td>teta (pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>ust (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to move</td>
<td>premikati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr</td>
<td>gospod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mrs</td>
<td>gospa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>museum</td>
<td>muzej (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music</td>
<td>glasba (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>morati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>namely</td>
<td>to morati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>napkin, serviette</td>
<td>serviseta (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>narrow</td>
<td>ozek/-zka/-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nationality</td>
<td>državljansko (n.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neck</td>
<td>vrat (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to need</td>
<td>potrebomati (potrebujem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neighbour</td>
<td>sosed/-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephew</td>
<td>nečak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>never</td>
<td>nikoli, nobenkrat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>nov/-a/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next year</td>
<td>prihodnje, drugo leto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niece</td>
<td>nečakinja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>night</td>
<td>nosčol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nobody, no one</td>
<td>aliče</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noon</td>
<td>poročen/-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>stare/-a/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>official</td>
<td>uradniki/daza/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>often</td>
<td>večkrat, velikokrat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on duty</td>
<td>dejurni/-a/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on one's own</td>
<td>svoj/-a/e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to offer</td>
<td>ponuditi (ponudim)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to open</td>
<td>odprieti (odprem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or, indicates a</td>
<td>ali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>oddanje (pravilo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>rdeč (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rose</td>
<td>ruža</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to rise</td>
<td>se pevati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>river</td>
<td>reka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>river</td>
<td>tlor (pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>living-room</td>
<td>dnevna soba (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>dolgi/-a/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long ago</td>
<td>zdavanaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to look for</td>
<td>iskati (lečam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to lose weight</td>
<td>slujšati (slusšam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lorry</td>
<td>tovarnik (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>ljubezen (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to fall in love</td>
<td>zaljubiti se (zaljubim se)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luck</td>
<td>sreča (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lunch</td>
<td>kosilo (n.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lungs</td>
<td>pljusač (pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>main meal</td>
<td>glavna jed (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>main road</td>
<td>glavna cesta (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>market</td>
<td>trg (m.), tržnica (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be married</td>
<td>poročeni/-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to get married</td>
<td>poročiti se (poročim se)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maybe, possibly</td>
<td>mogoče, morda jed (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meal</td>
<td>izmeriti (izmerim)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>measure</td>
<td>zdravilo (n.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medicine</td>
<td>spoznati (spoznam), srečati (srečam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to meet</td>
<td>sestanek (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meeting</td>
<td>spomin (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memory</td>
<td>jedišli list (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menu</td>
<td>sporočilo (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>message</td>
<td>mleko (n.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milk</td>
<td>mineral voda (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to miss</td>
<td>manjkati (manjšak), pogrešati (pogrešam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to mix</td>
<td>mestati (mešam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to mix with a person</td>
<td>družiti se z (družim se z)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modest</td>
<td>skromen/-a/-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moment</td>
<td>trenutek (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>ponedeljek (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month</td>
<td>denar (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mess</td>
<td>mese (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morning</td>
<td>jutro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mortgage</td>
<td>kredit (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>military</td>
<td>vojska</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>rojstnica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>ustvo (pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to move</td>
<td>premikati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr</td>
<td>gospod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mrs</td>
<td>gospa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>museum</td>
<td>muzej (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music</td>
<td>glasba (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>morati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>namely</td>
<td>to morati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>napkin, serviette</td>
<td>serviseta (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>narrow</td>
<td>ozek/-zka/-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nationality</td>
<td>državljansko (n.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neck</td>
<td>vrat (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to need</td>
<td>potrebomati (potrebujem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neighbour</td>
<td>sosed/-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephew</td>
<td>nečak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>never</td>
<td>nikoli, nobenkrat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>nov/-a/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next year</td>
<td>prihodnje, drugo leto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niece</td>
<td>nečakinja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>night</td>
<td>nosčol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nobody, no one</td>
<td>aliče</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noon</td>
<td>poročen/-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>stare/-a/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>official</td>
<td>uradniki/daza/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>often</td>
<td>večkrat, velikokrat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on duty</td>
<td>dejurni/-a/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on one's own</td>
<td>svoj/-a/e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to offer</td>
<td>ponuditi (ponudim)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to open</td>
<td>odprieti (odprem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or, indicates a</td>
<td>ali</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>oddanje (pravilo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>rdeč (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rose</td>
<td>ruža</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to rise</td>
<td>se pevati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>river</td>
<td>reka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>river</td>
<td>tlor (pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>living-room</td>
<td>dnevna soba (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>dolgi/-a/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long ago</td>
<td>zdavanaj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to look for</td>
<td>iskati (lečam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to lose weight</td>
<td>slujšati (slusšam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lorry</td>
<td>tovarnik (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>ljubezen (f.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Saturday
to say
scarf
to see
to seem (it seems)
to send
serious
she
shelf
shop
shop-assistant
short
to show
shower
side dish
similar, alike
to sing
sister
sister-in-law
to sit
skating rink
to ski

obljubiti
(obljubim)
gostilna (f.)
pulover (m.)
postaviti
(zpostavim)
zrediti se
(zredim se)
to put on
weight
quarter
radio
rain
to rain
rarely
raspberry
to read
reason
to remember
rent
to repair
report
reservation
rest, recover
breath
restaurant
ribs
rice
rich
to ride
river
running track
Russia
salad
sale
salt
salted
sandals
satisfied

sobota (f.)
reši (rečem)
šal (m.)
tajnik/ica
videti (vidim)
zdeži se (ždeži se)
postati (poštajem)
uren/sna/o
ona
polica (f.)
ladja (f.)
trgovina (f.)
prodajalci/ka
kratek/tka/o
pokazati
(pokažem)
prha (f.), tuž
(m.)
prikoha (f.)
podoben/bna/o
pcti (pojcm)
sestra
svakanja
sedeti (sedim)
drsališče (n.)
smučati
(smucam)
krilo (n.)
zaspan/a/o
Slovenia
majhen/hna/o
smrdeći
(smrdim)
dišati (dišam)
smejati se
(smejam se)
malca (f.)
kihati (khiham)
sneg (m.)
zato da
nogavice (pl.)
nekaj

something
sometimes
son
son-in-law
soup
cow
south
space
Spain
to speak
spectacles
spinach
spoon
sports park
spring
stairs
stamp
to stand
to start, begin
to stay
overnight
to steal
stepfather
stepmother
stomach
to stop
strange
strawberry
street
strong
student
studio flat
stupid
suit (for a)
woman
summer
sun

snežen/-sna/-o
clave/-e
something
that
something
that
something
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
then
something
th
# Grammatical index

The numbers below refer to the lessons in the book.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Lessons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectives</td>
<td>2, 7, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>7, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison of adjectives and adverbs</td>
<td>8, 9, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional and &quot;if&quot; clauses</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declensions</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative pronouns</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double negative</td>
<td>2, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dual form</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enclitics</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forming questions</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future tense</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative (command form)</td>
<td>4, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect questions</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive</td>
<td>4, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrumental</td>
<td>3, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locative</td>
<td>6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative questions</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerals</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optatives</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participles in</td>
<td>17, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past tense</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfective and imperfective verbs</td>
<td>8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal pronouns</td>
<td>1, 5, 6, 7, 9, 11, 12, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural of nouns</td>
<td>3, 8, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural nouns</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive pronouns</td>
<td>1, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present tense (the uses)</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive verbs</td>
<td>4, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative pronouns</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reported speech</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supine</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbal nouns</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>